Australian Government
Australian Digital Health Agency

Event Summary

CDA Implementation Guide

17 February 2020 v2.0.0

Draft for internal use

Document ID: DH-xxxx:2020

Draft Version 002

THIS SPECIFICATION IS AN UNTESTED DRAFT AND IS NOT SUITABLE FOR IMPLEMENTATION.

Australian Digital Health Agency ABN 84 425 496 912, Level 25, 175 Liverpool Street, Sydney, NSW 2000
Telephone 1300 901 001 or email help@digitalhealth.gov.au
www.digitalhealth.gov.au

Disclaimer

The Australian Digital Health Agency ("the Agency") makes the information and other material ("Information") in this document available in good faith but without any representation or warranty as to its accuracy or completeness. The Agency cannot accept any responsibility for the consequences of any use of the Information. As the Information is of a general nature only, it is up to any person using or relying on the Information to ensure that it is accurate, complete and suitable for the circumstances of its use.

Document control

This document is maintained in electronic form and is uncontrolled in printed form. It is the responsibility of the user to verify that this copy is the latest revision.

Security

The information contained herein must only be used for the purpose for which it is supplied and must not be disclosed other than explicitly agreed in writing with the Australian Digital Health Agency.

OFFICIAL

Document Information

Key Information

Owner	National Health Chief Information Officer, Infrastructure Operations
Contact for enquiries	Australian Digital Health Agency Help Centre t: 1300 901 001 e: help@digitalhealth.gov.au

Product Version History

Product version	Date	Release comments
1.2	7 Mar 2012	Initial public release.
1.3	10 Apr 2015	This version implements changes authorised in September 2014 (by CCB--345).
2.0.0	17 Feb 2020	This version implements terminology updates and transitions from openEHR based models to FHIR-based models. This is a backwards incompatible release

Related Documents

Name	Version/Release Date
Event Summary - PCEHR Conformance Profile	Version 1.4, Issued 10 April 2015
Event Summary Information Requirements	Version 1.2, Issued 10 April 2015
Common - Clinical Document	Version 1.5.2, Issued 28 February 2019
CDA Rendering Specification	Version 1.0, Issued 07 March 2012
HL7 Clinical Document Architecture	Release 2, January 2010
Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance	Version 1.0, Issued 10 October 2011

Acknowledgements

Council of Australian Governments

The Australian Digital Health Agency is jointly funded by the Australian Government and all state and territory governments.

Regenstrief Institute (LOINC)

This material contains content from LOINC™. The LOINC table, LOINC codes, LOINC panels and forms file, and LOINC linguistic variants file are copyright © 1995-2015, Regenstrief Institute, Inc. and the Logical Observation Identifiers Names and Codes (LOINC) Committee and available at no cost under the license at the LOINC Terms of Use. LOINC is a trademark of Regenstrief Institute, Inc., registered in the United States.

IHTSDO (SNOMED CT)

This material includes SNOMED Clinical Terms™ (SNOMED CT®) which is used by permission of the International Health Terminology Standards Development Organisation (IHTSDO). All rights reserved. SNOMED CT® was originally created by The College of American Pathologists. “SNOMED” and “SNOMED CT” are registered trademarks of the IHTSDO.

HL7 FHIR

This product includes all or a portion of material that is HL7 FHIR Copyright © 2011+ HL7 licensed under Creative Commons "No Rights Reserved".

HL7 International

This document includes excerpts of HL7™ International standards and other HL7 International material. HL7 International is the publisher and holder of copyright in the excerpts. The publication, reproduction and use of such excerpts is governed by the HL7 IP Policy and the HL7 International License Agreement. HL7 and CDA are trademarks of Health Level Seven International and are registered with the United States Patent and Trademark Office. FHIR is a registered trademark of Health Level Seven International.

This product includes all or a portion of the HL7 Vocabulary, or is derived from the HL7 Vocabulary, subject to a license from Health Level Seven International. Your use of the HL7 Vocabulary also is subject to this license, a copy of which is accessible through the following link: http://www.hl7.org/permalink/?VocabTables. The current complete HL7 Vocabulary is also available through this link. The HL7 Vocabulary is copyright © 1989-2010, Health Level Seven International. All rights reserved. THE HL7 VOCABULARY IS PROVIDED “AS IS.” ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE DISCLAIMED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANT-ABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Table of Contents

1. Introduction 1
1.1. Document purpose and scope 1
1.2. Context and use 1
1.3. How to read this document 2
1.4. Editorial note 2
1.5. Intended audience 2
1.6. Known issues 3
2. Guidance 5
2.1. Clinical Document Architecture Release 2 5
2.2. Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions 6
2.3. Conformance conventions 7
2.3.1. Template identifiers 8
2.3.2. Open and closed templates 9
2.3.3. Fixed value constraint 11
2.3.4. XPath like notation 12
2.3.5. Terminology binding 14
2.3.6. Conformance verbs 17
2.3.7. Cardinality notation 19
2.3.8. Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements 20
2.4. Mapping presentation and structure 23
2.4.1. Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements 24
2.4.2. Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements 25
3. Conformance 27
3.1. Base conformance requirements 27
3.2. Conformance profile conformance requirements 28
3.3. CDA narrative conformance requirements 29
4. Event Summary hierarchy 31
4.1. Logical hierarchy 31
5. CDA Header templates 37
5.1. ClinicalDocument 37
5.2. legalAuthenticator 40
5.3. component (Administrative Observations) 41
6. Document CDA templates 43
6.1. ClinicalDocument (Event Summary) 43
7. Section CDA templates 47
7.1. section (Event Overview) 47
7.2. section (Allergies) 49
7.3. section (Medications) 51
7.4. section (Medical History) 53
7.5. section (Immunisations) 55
7.6. section (Diagnostic Investigations) 57
8. Participation CDA templates 59
8.1. recordTarget (My Health Record Patient) 59
8.2. recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) 64
8.3. participant (Patient contact) 69
8.4. participant (Organization contact) 71
8.5. participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization) 73
8.6. participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner) 75
8.7. author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) 91
8.8. custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier) 79
8.9. informant (Base Patient) 81
8.10. informant (Base RelatedPerson) 84
8.11. informant (Base Practitioner) 86
8.12. author (Base Patient) 88
8.13. author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) 91
8.14. author (Base PractitionerRole) 93
8.15. author (Base RelatedPerson) 95

8.16. participant (author Base Organization) 97
9. Entity CDA templates 101
9.1. providerOrganization (Base Organization) 101
9.2. representedOrganization (Base Organization) 103
9.3. assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) 105
9.4. assignedPerson (Base Practitioner) 107
9.5. wholeOrganization (Base Organization) 109
9.6. scopingOrganization (Base Organization) 111
10. Act CDA templates 113
10.1. encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event) 113
10.2. encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event) 115
10.3. observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) 118
10.4. act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event) 123
10.5. substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine) 125
10.6. observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) 130
10.7. substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine) 132
10.8. observation (Summary Statement of Condition) 134
10.9. procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure) 138
10.10. ext:coverage2 (Practitioner qualification) 140
11. Common patterns 143
11.1. Entity Identifier 143
11.2. Personal Relationship 145
11.3. Qualification 148
11.4. Language Communication 150
A. Complex data type mappings to CDA (R2) 153
A.1. Identifier 154
A.2. Base HumanName 159
A.3. Address 162
A.4. AU Base Address 165
A.5. ContactPoint 168
A.6. AU Base Dosage 170
A.7. Timing 174
A.8. CodeableConcept as a Medicine Item Code 184
B. Examples 189
B.1. Event Summary example 1 190
B.2. Event Summary example 2 197
B.3. Event Summary example 3 198
C. Mapping from requirements 205
C.1. Mapping from ES information requirements 206
References 207

List of Examples

2.1. Use of templateId to assert conformance to two CDA templates 8
2.2. CDA mapping fragment - Interpreting an open template for logical elements 9
2.3. XPath like notation 12
2.4. CDA mapping fragment - XPath like notation 13
2.5. Interpreting required value set binding 15
2.6. Interpreting required value set binding 16
2.7. CDA mapping fragment - Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements 20
2.8. Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements 21
11.1. Entity Identifier - Australian IHI 144
11.2. Entity Identifier - Local Medical Record Number 144
11.3. Entity Identifier - Australian HPI-I 144
11.4. Entity Identifier - Australian HPI-O 144
11.5. Personal Relationship - author related person 146
11.6. Personal Relationship - performer related person 146
11.7. Qualification - Bachelor of Pharmacy 149
11.8. Qualification - List of qualifications 149
11.9. Language Communication - English is preferred 151
11.10. Language Communication - Pitjantjatjara is preferred 151
11.11. Language Communication - German is spoken 151
A.1. Identifier - Patient identifiers 155
A.2. PractitionerRole identifiers 156
A.3. Identifier - Organization identifier 157
A.4. Identifier - ProcedureRequest identifier 157
A.5. Base HumanName - name use, given names, family name 160
A.6. Base HumanName - unstructured name 160
A.7. Base HumanName - given name only 160
A.8. Base HumanName - structured name with period 160
A.9. Address - structured work and postal address 163
A.10. Address - structured home and physical address 163
A.11. Address - temporary international address 163
A.12. AU Base Address - no fixed address in Melbourne, VIC 166
A.13. AU Base Address - unstructured address 166
A.14. AU Base Address - structured postal address with period 166
A.15. AU Base Address - structured physical address 167
A.16. ContactPoint - home telephone with period 168
A.17. ContactPoint - home telephone 169
A.18. ContactPoint - work email 169
A.19. AU Base Dosage - MedicationStatement with two instances of structured dosage 172
A.20. AU Base Dosage - MedicationStatement with one instance of structured dosage 173
A.21. Timing - Dosage with timing 176
A.22. Timing - b.i.d twice a day 177
A.23. Timing - q12h Every 12 hours 177
A.24. Timing - t.i.d Three times a day, at times determined by the person administering the medication 178
A.25. Timing - q8h Every 8 hours 178
A.26. Timing - qid four times daily 178
A.27. Timing - q6h Every 6 hours 179
A.28. Timing - qd daily 179
A.29. Timing - q24h Every 24 hours 179
A.30. Timing - qod Every other day 180
A.31. Timing - qm Once a month 180
A.32. Timing - q4-6h Every 4 to 6 hours 180
A.33. Timing - qam In the morning 181
A.34. Timing - qam Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes 181
A.35. Timing - 1 hour after meal 182
A.36. Timing - before dinner 182
A.37. Timing - every evening 182
A.38. Timing - every Saturday 183

A.39. CodeableConcept - Medication with coded brand 185
A.40. CodeableConcept - Medication with multiple codings 186
A.41. CodeableConcept - Medication without a coded value 186
A.42. CodeableConcept - Medication with both brand name and generic name and no coded value 187
A.43. CodeableConcept - Medication with generic name and no coded value 187
B.1. Event Summary example 1 190
B.2. Event Summary example 2 197
B.3. Event Summary example 3 198

1 Introduction

This implementation guide is an *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]* specification to represent a Event Summary. An event summary is a record, authored by a practitioner, of a significant healthcare event involving the individual that is useful to a wide range of practitioners in delivering care.

1.1 Document purpose and scope

The primary aim of the implementation guide is to take implementers step by step through mapping each element of the Event Summary (ES) model (*Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) to a corresponding CDA attribute or element. The resulting CDA document can be used for the electronic exchange of ES information between healthcare providers.

This implementation guide is not to be used as a guide to presentation (or rendering) of the data. Beyond defining conformance requirements on CDA narratives it contains no information as to how the data described by it should be displayed and no such guidance should be inferred from This implementation guide.

Reference has been made to International and Australian Standards, and to Standards from Health Level Seven. The following standard is referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of its content constitutes requirements for the purposes of this specification: *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]*.

Wherever possible, material in this specification is based on existing standards. All efforts have been made to minimise divergence from the HL7 Australia profiles of HL7 International standards (*Australian Base Implementation Guide (AU Base 1.1.1) [HL7AUF3B2]*) to provide for system interoperability and compatibility with other profiles. Issues of an editorial nature in the source material (such as spelling or punctuation errors) are intentionally reproduced.

1.2 Context and use

A CDA implementation guide is part of a package of documents and files that support the development of software to exchange a type of clinical document, an end-product clinical specification package.

An Agency end-product clinical specification package supports software developers to create and interpret instances of a clinical document. The core of each package is a specification of the information content of instances of the clinical document.

Supplementary contents of the package include statements of scenarios for which the specification is appropriate, guidance on implementing the specification, and guidance on testing purported instances.

The contents may include:

- statement of requirements
- CDA implementation guide – a statement of constraints and custom extensions on *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]*
- FHIR implementation guide – a statement of constraints and custom extensions on *FHIR Release 3 (STU) [HL7FHIR3]*
- template package library – a set of Schematron schema to test conformance of CDA documents with the specification
- conformance profile – a statement of conformance requirements for exchanging documents within a particular scenario such as the My Health Record
- release notes

Clinical specification packages contain only files relevant to the particular clinical document. Specifications that are common to many clinical documents and should be considered part of the specification package, as directed by the relevant release note and conformance profile, are contained in the *Common - Clinical Document [DH2019a]*.

1.3 How to read this document

This implementation guide contains descriptions of both constraints on HL7 CDA and, where necessary, custom extensions to the HL7 CDA, for the purposes of fulfilling the requirements for Australian implementations of event summarys. These constraints are defined as a set of templates.

For implementers interested in a practitioner authored medicines list, such as PSML, the starting point for the CDA templates is ClinicalDocument (Event Summary), which references the additional templates necessary to assert conformance for this implementation guide.

Chapters that may be of primary interest are organised as follow:

- 3 *Conformance* - defines the conformance requirements applicable to a clinical document instance claiming conformance to a `ClinicalDocument` template defined in this implementation guide or any derived conformance profile.
- 4 *Event Summary hierarchy* - hierarchical overview of the model for this document-level usage scenario.
- 5 *CDA Header templates* - contains the CDA Header templates that apply across all of the supported usage scenarios in this implementation guide.
- 6 *Document CDA templates* - defines the `ClinicalDocument` template for each logical model of a document-level usage scenario, e.g. Event Summary, in this implementation guide.
- 7 *Section CDA templates* - defines the `section` templates referenced by a `ClinicalDocument` template in this implementation guide.
- 8 *Participation CDA templates* - defines the templates for individuals and organisations, called participations, referenced by other templates in this implementation guide.
- 9 *Entity CDA templates* - defines the templates for entities referenced by a participation template in this implementation guide.
- 10 *Act CDA templates* - defines the templates for entry-level classes, called acts, referenced by other templates in this implementation guide.
- Appendix B, *Examples* - provides examples demonstrating a document-level usage model, e.g. Event Summary, and that conform to the CDA templates defined in this implementation guide.

1.4 Editorial note

This implementation guide is an early working specification that is available for comment and review. It may be used to solicit feedback and to provide insight as to the expected content in a forthcoming stable and approved version of the specification.

This implementation guide may not considered to be complete enough or sufficiently reviewed to be safe for implementation and use in production systems. It may have known issues and still be in development.

It is intended to supersede *Event Summary Structured Content Specification [NEHT2015b]* and *Event Summary CDA Implementation Guide [NEHT2015f]*. This new, backwards incompatible version, is intended to address alignment to HL7 FHIR and is the result of work undertaken in conjunction with HL7 Australia.

1.5 Intended audience

This implementation guide is aimed at software development teams, architects, designers, clinicians and informatics researchers who are responsible for the delivery of clinical applications, infrastructure components and messaging interfaces, and also for those who wish to evaluate the clinical suitability of the Agency-endorsed specifications.

This implementation guide and related artefacts are technical in nature and the audience is expected to be familiar with the language of health data specifications and to have some familiarity with health information standards and specifications, such as *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]* and Standards Australia IT-014 documents. Definitions and examples are provided to clarify relevant terminology usage and intent.

1.6 Known issues

This section lists known issues with this specification at the time of publishing. We are working on solutions to these issues and encourage comments to help us develop these solutions.

Reference	Description
Source material errors	Material in this specification is based on existing standards and all efforts have been made to minimise divergence. Issues of an editorial nature in the source material (such as spelling or punctuation errors in an element description) are intentionally reproduced.
ES CDA implementation guide roadmap	The objective of this specification is to provide guidance on the implementation in HL7 CDA Release 2 of event summary documents (defined in HL7 FHIR). The current guide covers implementation in HL7 CDA Release 2 of the event summary model defined in FHIR Release 3 (STU) (*Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*). The model is in transition to a FHIR Release 4 representation in collaboration with HL7 Australia. This move has normative implications to the CDA representation that are expected to result in major version incrementation to accommodate backwards incompatible changes. Widespread changes to terminology, including code system and value set identifiers, are expected to make up the bulk of the backwards incompatible changes. Where possible, FHIR Release 4 terminology has been pre-adopted in this implementation guide.
PractitionerRole > healthcareService	PractitionerRole > healthcareService is not currently mapped into CDA. Future releases of this implementation guide are expected to include a CDA template for the concept of a HealthcareService.
AllergyInterolance > onset[x]	onset[x] as a Range is not currently mapped to CDA. Future releases of this implementation guide are expected to include one or more mappings to support a Range.
section (Diagnostic Investigations)	The design of this section is incomplete. The intended structure of section.entry and section.emptyReas-on is not yet available.
Resolving URLs to Agency logical models (FHIR profiles) – not available	Direct links to the Agency logical models (published as FHIR profiles) referenced throughout this implementation guide are not available. It is intended that logical models, e.g. “Patient with Mandatory Identifier”, will be published at a resolvable address. Future releases of this implementation guide are expected to hyperlink all references to logical models. At this time the Agency logical models are only available via the *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*.
PBS Medicine Item Codes	The PBS Medicines Item Codes value set, originating from the HL7 AU Base Medication profile, is a placeholder resource. Forthcoming work is expected to result in an authoritative value set published in the National Clinical Terminology Service (NCTS) with the following canonical URL:https://healthterminologies.gov.au/fhir/ValueSet/australian-pbs-item-1. Implementers are to make use of the value set served via the NCTS when available.
GTIN for Medicines	No expansion is available for this value set using the associated code system published in the HL7 AU Base material. None of the concepts defined by the code system are included in the code system resource. Implementers are expected to have available an expansion that defines what codes are in the value sets to make use of this terminology.

Reference	Description
MIMS Terminology	No expansion is available for this value set using the associated code system published in the HL7 AU Base material. None of the concepts defined by the code system are included in the code system resource. Implementers are expected to have available an expansion that defines what codes are in the value sets to make use of this terminology.
Appendix C. Examples	This chapter has some early content as well as some stubs. These examples are very early working drafts.
Appendix D. Mapping from requirements	This chapter is a placeholder - mappings yet to be done.
Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]	The corresponding Event Summary FHIR IG is currently in progress; draft content is available from https://github.com/AuDigitalHealth/ci-fhir-stu3 (public) | https://stash.digitalhealth.gov.au/projects/CIL/repos/ci-fhir-stu3/browse (internal).

2 Guidance

2.1 Clinical Document Architecture Release 2

A CDA document is an XML document built following the rules described in the CDA specification, which conforms to the HL7 CDA schema provided by HL7. The CDA document is based on the semantics provided by the HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary standards [HL7V3].

A CDA document has two main parts: the header and the body.

The CDA document header is consistent across all CDA documents, regardless of document type. The header identifies and classifies the document and provides information on authentication, the encounter, the patient, and the involved providers.

The body contains the clinical report. The body can be marked-up text (narrative, renderable text) or a combination of both marked-up text and structured data. The marked-up text can be transformed to XHTML and displayed to a human. The structured data allows machine processing of the information shown in the narrative section.

All clinical information is required to be marked up in CDA narratives. These narratives are CDA-defined hypertext, able to be rendered in web browsers with only a standard accompanying transformation. This transformation is produced and distributed by HL7.

The rendered narrative can stand alone as a source of authenticated information for consuming parties. Content from the CDA body is not to be omitted from the narrative.

Further information and conformance requirements on the CDA narrative is available in CDA narrative conformance requirements.

The following references are recommended to gain a better understanding of CDA:

- *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]*
- *HL7 Version 3 Standard [HL7V3]*
- *CDA Examples [RING2009]*
- *CDA Validation Tools: infoway_release_2_2X_18.zip [INFO2009]*

2.2 Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions

As part of the CDA, standard extensions are allowed as follows:

> Locally-defined markup may be used when local semantics have no corresponding representation in the CDA specification. CDA seeks to standardize the highest level of shared meaning while providing a clean and standard mechanism for tagging meaning that is not shared. In order to support local extensibility requirements, it is permitted to include additional XML elements and attributes that are not included in the CDA schema. These extensions should not change the meaning of any of the standard data items, and receivers must be able to safely ignore these elements. Document recipients must be able to faithfully render the CDA document while ignoring extensions.
>
> Extensions may be included in the instance in a namespace other than the HL7v3 namespace, but must not be included within an element of type ED (e.g., <text> within <procedure>) since the contents of an ED datatype within the conformant document may be in a different namespace. Since all conformant content (outside of elements of type ED) is in the HL7 namespace, the sender can put any extension content into a foreign namespace (any namespace other than the HL7 namespace). Receiving systems must not report an error if such extensions are present. *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]*

A number of extensions to CDA have been defined in this implementation guide. To maintain consistency, the same development paradigm has been used as CDA.

These Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions have been added to the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema and are incorporated in the namespace `http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0` as shown in Appendix B, *Examples*. Future versions of CDA extensions will be versioned as per the following example:

```
http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/4.0
```

The Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema therefore differs from the base HL7 CDA W3C XML schema (referred to in this implementation guide as the HL7 CDA schema). CDA documents which include extensions will fail to validate against the HL7 CDA schema – this is a known limitation.

An event summary document that conforms to this specification will validate against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema that accompanies this specification, and will validate against the HL7 CDA schema once the extensions have been removed. Note that merely passing schema validation does not ensure conformance. For more information, refer to Base conformance requirements.

2.3 Conformance conventions

This implementation guide specifies the CDA templates for implementing a event summary. A CDA template is a set of constraints, and where necessary, custom extensions to *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]*, expressed using conformance conventions as defined in this implementation guide.

CDA templates are presented in a CDA mapping table (see Mapping presentation and structure) and indicated by the presence of a `templateId` (see Template identifiers).

2.3.1 Template identifiers

Template identifiers (`templateId`) are unique to each CDA template. When valued in an instance, the template identifier signals the assertion of conformance to a set of template-defined constraints. The root value of this element (e.g. `@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.1002.226"`) provides a unique identifier for the template in question.

The following example demonstrates assertion of conformance to two CDA templates. This use of `templateId` indicates that the CDA instance not only conforms to the CDA specification, but in addition, conforms to two templates.

Example 2.1. Use of templateId to assert conformance to two CDA templates

```
<ClinicalDocument classCode="DOCCLIN" moodCode="EVN" xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3" xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org/v3-example"
xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
    <typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>
    <!-- ClinicalDocument templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033"/>
    <!-- ClinicalDocument (Shared Medicines List Authored by Practitioner) templateId-->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100065"/>
    …
</ClinicalDocument>
```

2.3.2 Open and closed templates

A CDA template may be either an open template or a closed template:

- In an open template all of the features of the CDA R2 base specification [HL7CDAR2] are allowed except as constrained by explicitly specified constraints.
- In a closed template everything that is allowed must be explicitly specified and nothing further may be allowed.

The template context in this implementation guide is that of an open template unless otherwise stated. A closed template is indicated by the presence of the following constraint:

```
This template SHALL be a closed template
```

For example if a CDA template says nothing about the use of the `id` element:

- In an open template context this means that `id` is allowed as specified in the schema
- In a closed template context this means that no use of `id` is allowed

Example 2.2. CDA mapping fragment - Interpreting an open template for logical elements

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /	
Composition	A clinical document written by the nominated provider, which contains key pieces of information about an individual's health status and is useful to a wide range of providers in assessing individuals and delivering care.	0..*	Composition	**ClinicalDocument**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of ClinicalDocument is 1. Although the model indicates that Composition is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. In addition to the template defined in this mapping table, ClinicalDocument **SHALL** conform to the template defined in `ClinicalDocument`.
				ClinicalDocument/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				ClinicalDocument/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020"**	
Composition > **section (Event Overview)**	Summary information concerning the event.	1..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/**component[event]**	
				ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[event]/**section**	section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in `section (Event Overview)`.
Composition > **section (Allergies)**	Information about allergies or intolerances identified or reported during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/**component[allergy]**	
				ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy]/**section**	section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in `section (Allergies)`.

The above template fragment states that each instance of the logical element Composition is represented as a `ClinicalDocument` that:

- explicitly requires an instance of `templateId` with a `root` that conforms to the fixed value constraint and an instance of `extension` that conforms to the fixed value constraint. Other attributes of `templateId`, e.g. `assigningAuthorityName`, are implicitly allowed.
- implicitly allows any other child attributes or elements of `ClinicalDocument` including other instances of `templateId`.
- explicitly requires exactly one `component` with an instance of `section` that conforms to `section (Event Overview)` [templateId: 1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059]. Other `component` elements or attributes are implicitly allowed.
- explicitly allows at most one `component` with an instance of `section` that conforms to `section (Allergies)` [templateId: 1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069]. Other `component` elements or attributes are implicitly allowed.
- implicitly allows one or more instances of a `component` with a `section` that does not conform to either `section (Event Overview)` [templateId: 1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059] or `section (Allergies)` [templateId: 1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069].

2.3.3 Fixed value constraint

A fixed value constraint is used to bind the value of an element or attribute to the exact string as presented between the quote marks (i.e. "FIXED_VALUE"). This type of constraint is frequently used in a template to cast an element to a particular data type, or bind an element of type Coded Simple (CS) to a single code, or fix an attribute of a primitive type to a value.

A fixed value constraint in the "CDA schema element" column of a CDA mapping table will use XPath like notation, for example:

```
/ClinicalDocument/confidentialityCode/@nullFlavor="N/A"
```

The use of "=" is to be interpreted as **SHALL**. The above example specifies a conformance requirement that the `nullFlavor` attribute **SHALL** be instantiated as "N/A".

A fixed value constraint in the "CDA constraints and comments" column of a CDA mapping table will make use of Conformance verbs, for example:

```
displayName SHOULD be "Closing the Gap Copayment Eligibility Indicator"
```

2.3.4 XPath like notation

This implementation guide uses an XML Path Language (XPath) like notation to identify the CDA schema element(s) to which conformance requirements are applied.

This notation provides a mechanism that will be familiar to developers for identifying parts of an XML document. XPath syntax selects nodes from an XML document using a path containing the context of the node(s). The path is constructed from node names and attribute names (prefixed by a "@") and catenated with a "/" symbol. In addition an [index] is used to differentiate similar mappings e.g. `participant[location]` and `participant[author]`.

The syntax is: {/name{[index]}}n

Where:

- {} indicates optional
- {}n means a section that may repeat
- [index] differentiates two similar mappings and indicates that a pattern 'like this' is to be applied (see Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements)

An index after the name, such as `component[admin_obs]` or `entry[close_gap]` implies that there are expected to be two or more different `component` elements and `entry` elements instantiated in the `ClinicalDocument` instance. The indexes differentiate which CDA schema element is referenced in the path.

The `value` attribute of the `value` element from the below example could be referred to with the path `/ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/entry[close_gap]/observation/value/@value`.

Example 2.3. XPath like notation

```
<ClinicalDocument xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3" xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
   xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
   …

   <component>
      <structuredBody>
         <component>
            <section>
               <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000"/>
               <code code="102.16080" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components" displayName="Administrative Observations"/>
               <title>Administrative Observations</title>
               <entry>
                  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                     <code codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" code="103.32011" displayName="Closing the Gap Copayment Eligibility Indicator" />
                     <value xsi:type="BL" value="true"/>
                  </observation>
               </entry>

               …
</ClinicalDocument>
```

The corresponding entries in the CDA schema element column of a CDA mapping table for `/ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/entry[close_gap]/observation/value` could be expressed using the XPath like notation as in the template fragment below.

Example 2.4. CDA mapping fragment - XPath like notation

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section	
Patient > **closing-the-gap-registration**	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	**entry[close_gap]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[close_gap]/**observation**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**code**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@code="103.32011"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Closing the Gap Copayment Eligibility Indicator".
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**value**	closing-the-gap-registration is "true" if eligible for Closing the Gap co-payment. value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "BL".

2.3.5 Terminology binding

Vocabulary is specified in this implementation guide as:

- Fixed value constraint if only one permissible value is allowed, or
- Binding to a value set if more than one permissible value is allowed, e.g. Medication Act Status HL7 v3 (required)

Where used in this implementation guide, binding strengths are hyperlinked to their normative definition. An excerpt is provided in the below table for ease of use, where there are conflicts the target normative definition in *FHIR Release 3 (STU) [HL7FHIR3]* applies.

Binding strength	Description
required	To be conformant, codes in this element **SHALL** be from the specified value set.
extensible	To be conformant, codes in this element **SHALL** be from the specified value set if any of the codes within the value set can apply to the concept being communicated.
preferred	Instances are encouraged to draw from the specified codes for interoperability purposes but are not required to do so to be considered conformant.
example	Instances are not expected or even encouraged to draw from the specified value set. The value set merely provides examples of the types of concepts intended to be included.

Terminology binding notation

A value set binding will be specified in the "CDA constraints and comments" column of a CDA mapping table as the title of the value set (hyperlinked to its definition) followed by identification of the binding strength (hyperlinked to its definition). For example:

> Encounter Act Status HL7 v3 (required)

In simple terms the above required binding indicates that the CDA schema element **SHALL** be valued with one of the codes from that value set. However valuing of an element in CDA is always in the context of the data type and the code system specification (e.g. case sensitive or version required).

Example of interpreting a required terminology binding on an element of type Coded Simple Value (CS)

A Coded Simple Value data type, or CS is defined in the HL7 V3 Data types standards [HL7V3]. It is the simplest form of coded data and consists only of a code, other attributes are prohibited. The code system and code system version are fixed by the context in which CS value occurs. Common instances typed as CS include `statusCode`, `@classCode`, `@moodCode`, and `@nullFlavor` which have HL7-defined value sets.

For example, Encounter Act Status HL7 v3 (required), applied to a `encounter/statusCode` element is to be interpreted as:

- `statusCode/@code` **SHALL** be present and **SHALL** contain a code from Encounter Act Status HL7 v3
- `statusCode/@nullFlavor` **SHALL NOT** be present as no meaningful value can be supplied
- no other attributes can be supplied as `encounter/statusCode` is of type Coded Simple (CS) which prohibits additional attributes

Example 2.5. Interpreting required value set binding

```
<statusCode code="active" />
```

Example of interpreting a required terminology binding on an element of type Concept Descriptor (CD)

A Concept Descriptor data type, or CD, is defined in the HL7 V3 Data types standards [HL7V3]. It is a reference to a concept defined in a code system. Common instances typed as CD include `code`, and `value` when typed to CD.

For example, Encounter Act Status HL7 v3 (required) applied to an `observation/code` is to be interpreted as:

- `code/@code` **SHALL** be present and **SHALL** contain a code from Encounter Act Status HL7 v3
- `code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.14"` **SHALL** be present
- `code/@nullFlavor` **SHALL NOT** be present as no meaningful value can be supplied
- `code/@displayName` **SHOULD** be present and **SHOULD** contain the display associated with the selected code from the value set
- `code/@codeSystemName` **SHOULD** be present and **SHOULD** contain the display associated with the code system as it is registered with a registration authority such as HL7
- `code/@originalText` **SHOULD** be present and **SHALL** carry the full text associated with this code as selected by, typed by, or displayed to the author
- `code/@qualifier` **SHALL NOT** be present as the example code system does not define qualifier values

- `code/@translation` **MAY** be present if an alternative terminology is in use in the sending system and a translation is available

Example 2.6. Interpreting required value set binding

```
<code code="active" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.14" />

<!-- or -->

<code code="active" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.14"
codeSystemName="v3.ActStatus" displayName="active"/>

<!-- or -->

<code code="active" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.14"
codeSystemName="v3.ActStatus" displayName="active">
   <originalText>Active</originalText>
</code>
```

2.3.6 Conformance verbs

Where used in this implementation guide, the keywords **SHALL**, **SHOULD**, **MAY**, **SHALL NOT** and **SHOULD NOT** from *Key Words for Use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels [RFC2119]* are to be interpreted as described in the table below.

Conformance verb	Interpretation
SHALL	An absolute requirement. Where **SHALL** appears in any conformance constraint it indicates a mandatory requirement. Where **SHALL** is applied to the occurrences of an element or attribute then that element or attribute must be present but can be null if the value is not known and the value has not been constrained to not allow a null value.
SHOULD	A requirement that is considered best practice or recommendation for inclusion. There may be valid reasons to ignore an item, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course. Where **SHOULD** appears in a conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range. For a sending application where **SHOULD** is applied to the occurrences of an item then that item must be present if a sending application has the data for that data element. If the value is not known the element or attribute does not need to be included. Implementers must support an optional requirement.
MAY	A requirement that can be included or omitted as the author decides with no implications. Where **MAY** appears in a conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range. Implementers must support an optional requirement.
SHALL NOT	An absolute prohibition. Where **SHALL NOT** appears in any conformance constraint it indicates a mandatory prohibition requirement.

Conformance verb	Interpretation
SHOULD NOT	A requirement that is considered best practice or recommendation against inclusion. There may be valid reasons to ignore an item, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course. Where **SHOULD NOT** appears in a conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range. For a sending application where **SHOULD NOT** is applied to the occurrences of an item then that element or attribute must be present if a sending application has the data for that data element. If the value is not known the element or attribute does not need to be included. Implementers must support an optional requirement.

2.3.7 Cardinality notation

The cardinality range specifies the allowable occurrences in the format "m..n" where m is the minimum allowed members of the set (lower bound) and n is the maximum allowed members of the set (upper bound). The allowed values for m and n are 0, any positive integer, and *.

The table below demonstrates a representative set of examples of cardinality range and how to interpret that cardinality range; p is positive integer greater than the minimum allowed members of the set.

Cardinality range	Interpretation
0..0	zero (explicitly prohibited)
0..1	zero or one
1..1	exactly one
0..*	zero or more
1..*	at least one
2..*	at least two
1..p	at least one and not more than p
2..p	at least two and not more than p

2.3.8 Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements

A CDA mapping table for logical elements will include a logical cardinality range for each logical element and a series of CDA schema elements that when instantiated are considered to be the CDA representation of that logical element.

In order to instantiate a logical element all CDA schema elements mapped to that logical element are to be instantiated unless a constraint is present in the mapping table to indicate otherwise. This means that while the first CDA schema element in a series has a comparative relationship to the logical cardinality, the effect on the additional CDA schema elements in a series is always that their minimum occurrence is to be interpreted as 1.

The logical cardinality is applied to the first mapped CDA schema element in a series in the following manner:

- The most strict minimum occurrence between the logical cardinality or the CDA schema cardinality is applied.
  - If a logical element has a minimum cardinality of 1 and the mapped CDA schema element has a minimum cardinality of 0 then the most strict cardinality of 1 applies to that CDA schema element.
- A CDA schema element with an [index] (see XPath like notation), e.g. `representedOrganization/name[business]`, has the maximum occurrence of the logical element applied as a pattern 'like this'.
  - For example, if the logical cardinality of Organization > name is 0..1 and that logical element is mapped to `representedOrganization/name[business]="TestOrg"` (CDA schema cardinality of 0..*), then a maximum of one instance of `representedOrganization/name` that has a value of "TestOrg" may be present. Other instances of `representedOrganization/name` that do not meet the pattern of "TestOrg" may be present.
- A CDA schema element with no [index] (see XPath like notation), e.g. `representedOrganization/name`, has the most strict maximum occurrence between the logical cardinality or the CDA schema cardinality applied.
  - For example, if the logical cardinality of Organization > name is 0..1 and that logical element is mapped to `representedOrganization/name` (CDA schema cardinality of 0..*), then the most strict cardinality of 1 applies to that CDA schema element.

Example 2.7. CDA mapping fragment - Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
section	A set of allergies or intolerances that have been categorised as critical.	Cardinality comes from linking element	BackboneElement	**section**	section/@nullFlavor **SHALL NOT** be present.
				section/**templateId**	
				section/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100092"**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
section > **title**	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/**title**	
section > **code**	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/**code**	
				section/code/**@code="48765-2"**	
				section/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"**	LOINC
				section/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Allergies &or adverse reactions".
section > **text**	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	Narrative	section/**text**	
section > **entry**	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	1..*	Reference(Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)	section/**entry[adv]**	observation **SHALL** conform to the template defined in `observation (Critical Allergy or Intolerance)`.
				section/entry[adv]/**observation**	

The above template fragment states that each instance of the logical element section is represented as a `section` with:

- `section` attributes that are not `nullFlavor` (e.g. `classCode`) are allowed as defined in the CDA schema as long as conformance to Base conformance requirements is maintained.
- One `templateId` with a `root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100092"`. Additional instances of `templateId` are allowed.
- Exactly one `title`.
- Exactly one `code` with a `code="48765-2"` and a `codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"` and a `displayName`.
- At least one `entry[adv]/observation` that conforms to the template `observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) [templateId: 1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100093]`. Additional instances of `entry` that do not contain an `observation` are allowed.
- Additional `section` elements (e.g. `author`) are allowed as defined in the CDA schema as long as conformance to Base conformance requirements is maintained.

Example 2.8. Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements

```
<ClinicalDocument xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3" xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
   xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
   …
   <component>
      <structuredBody>
         …
         <!-- section (Allergies) -->
         <component>
            <section>
```

```
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100092"/>
            <code code="48765-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" displayName="Allergies &amp;or adverse reactions"/>
            <title>Critical Allergies and Adverse Reactions</title>
            <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">Allergy to Latex (CRITICAL)</text>
            …
            <!--section entry -->
            <entry typeCode="DRIV">
               <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100093"/>
                  …
               </observation>
            </entry>
         </section>
      </component>
   …
</ClinicalDocument>
```

2.4 Mapping presentation and structure

The CDA templates described in this implementation guide are presented in table format and will be either:

- a mapping of each logical element of the logical model (i.e. profiled FHIR resources published in *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) to a corresponding CDA attribute or element, or
- a set of CDA attributes or elements with specified infrastructure or control requirements that are not sourced from the logical model but are necessary for supporting the usage scenarios in a CDA implementation.

CDA templates mapping logical elements are roughly grouped by HL7 Reference Information Model (RIM) class within a templates chapter, e.g. 8 *Participation CDA templates*.

The heading for each child section identifies the CDA schema element that is templated, and may also identify the name of part of the logical model that the template corresponds to, e.g. recordTarget (My Health Record Patient) defines the CDA template of the `recordTarget` CDA schema element to represent the logical model My Health Record Patient.

2.4.1 Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements

A CDA mapping table for logical elements aims to take implementers step by step through mapping each element of the logical model to a corresponding CDA attribute or element. The following section describes in more detail the fields used to present the mapping content in this implementation guide.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA conformance level, e.g. CDA Header, CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Context: The root context that is applied as a prefix to the CDA schema element paths in the mapping rows below	
The logical hierarchical path in the logical model expressed using names of the elements in the logical model. If there is a name in round brackets after the path, this is the label for that element or resource. The text in **bold** (the last in the path) is the subject for this row in the convention <Parent (Label)> > <**Child (Label)**>, e.g. Composition > **section (Allergies)**	The description of the element in the logical model.	The cardinality of the logical element in the logical model (see Cardinality notation). The root element of each template will typically express an inherited cardinality from the parent element in a parent template by stating: Cardinality comes from linking element A logical cardinality is applied to the mapped CDA schema elements as described in Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements: • The most strict minimum occurrence between the logical cardinality or the CDA schema defined cardinality is applied. • The most strict maximum occurrence applies to CDA schema elements without an [index]. • The maximum occurrence of the logical cardinality applies as a pattern 'like this' to CDA schema elements with an [index].	The type of the logical element (hyperlinked to the definition of the [HL7FHIR3] type) in the logical model. This may be expressed as a type that is further constrained by a model in the convention <model name>, e.g. Patient with Mandatory Identifier.	The CDA schema element(s) in the CDA template that when instantiated are considered to be the CDA representation of that logical element; expressed using an XPath like notation, e.g.: participant[location]/associatedEntity/**code** The path always starts from the context as defined in the grey header row above each group of mapping rows. The last CDA schema element in the path is presented in bold to aid the reader. Typically a logical model element will map to multiple CDA schema elements. In order to instantiate the logical element in CDA, the minimum cardinality of the mapped CDA schema elements should be understood to be 1 unless an associated constraint is present to indicate a different cardinality (see Interpreting cardinality in a CDA mapping table for logical elements).	Additional information or guidance on implementing the logical element in CDA to support usage scenarios, e.g. When sending to the My Health Record, an IHI is expected. Constraints on the CDA schema elements, identified by use of Conformance verbs, e.g. code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Terminology binding, e.g. Address Type HL7 v3 (required).

2.4.2 Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements

A CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements will define conformance requirements that are not sourced from a logical model and that apply cross all of the supported usage scenarios. The following section describes in more detail the fields used to present the mapping content in this implementation guide.

CDA mapping

CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
CDA conformance level, e.g. CDA Header, CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements		Context: The root context that is applied as a prefix to the CDA schema element paths in the mapping rows below	
The CDA schema element(s) in the CDA template using an XPath like notation, e.g.: ClinicalDocument/versionNumber/**@value** The path always starts from the context as defined in the grey header row above each group of mapping rows. The last CDA schema element in the path is presented in bold to aid the reader.	The description of the CDA schema element definitions, sourced from HL7 Clinical Document Architecture, Release 2 [HL7CDAR2].	The cardinality of the CDA schema element in the template (see Cardinality notation). The root element of a template may express an inherited cardinality from the parent element in a parent template by stating: Cardinality comes from linking element	Additional information or guidance on the use of the CDA schema element to support usage scenarios, e.g. The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints. Constraints on the CDA schema elements, identified by use of Conformance verbs, e.g. code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Terminology binding, e.g. Address Type HL7 v3 (required).

3 Conformance

Conformance claims are typically made against the templates in this implementation guide and additional conformance profiles documented elsewhere such as *Event Summary - PCEHR Conformance Profile [NEHT2015ag]*.

3.1 Base conformance requirements

Any document that claims conformance to a `ClinicalDocument` template defined in this implementation guide or any derived conformance profile **SHALL** meet these base requirements:

- It **SHALL** be a valid HL7 CDA instance. In particular:
  - It **SHALL** be valid against the HL7 CDA schema (once extensions have been removed).
  - It **SHALL** conform to the HL7 V3 R1 data type specification.
  - It **SHALL** conform to the semantics of the RIM and Structural Vocabulary.
- It **SHALL** be valid against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema that accompanies this implementation guide after any additional extensions not in the Australian Digital Health Agency extension namespace have been removed, along with any other CDA content not described by this implementation guide.
- It **SHALL** conform to the CDA templates it claims conformance to.
- It **SHALL** be valid against the additional conformance requirements that are established in this implementation guide (i.e. any normative use of the word "shall" identified by the term presented in uppercase and bold typeface).
- The narrative **SHALL** conform to the requirements described in this implementation guide.
- The document **SHALL** conform to the requirements specified in the CDA Rendering Specification [NEHT2012s].
- Any additional content included in the CDA document that is not described by this implementation guide:
  - **SHALL NOT** qualify or negate content described by this implementation guide
  - **SHALL** be clinically safe for receivers of the document to ignore the non-narrative additions when interpreting the existing content.
- A system that *consumes* ES CDA documents **SHALL** be able to:
  - correctly process conformant instance documents, including correctly understanding all the information in the header and it **MAY** but is not required to, reject non-conformant documents.
  - correctly render the document for end-users when appropriate (see Clinical Document Architecture Release 2) but is not required to process any or all of the structured data entries in the CDA document.

3.2 Conformance profile conformance requirements

Conformance profiles of this implementation guide **MAY** make additional rules that override templates in this implementation guide in regard to:

- Allowing the use of alternative value sets in place of the value sets - this is limited to not overriding the rules of the terminology binding strength.
    - For example, a required value set may be overridden by a value set whose values are a subset of those of the required binding.
- Restricting the data type of a CDA schema element or attribute.
- Restricting the allowed values of a CDA schema element or attribute.
- Restricting the cardinality of a CDA schema element or attribute.
- Providing more specific or additional mappings to CDA schema elements or attributes.
- Providing refined usage scenarios, definitions, and implementation guidance.

A conformance profile cannot break the rules established in this implementation guide.

3.3 CDA narrative conformance requirements

CDA requires that each section in its body include a narrative block, containing a clinically complete version of the section's encoded content using custom hypertext markup defined by HL7. The narrative is the human-readable and attestable part of a CDA document, and can stand alone as an accurate representation of the content of the document without any need to consult entries in the body.

It is an *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]* requirement that all clinical information **SHALL** be marked up in CDA narratives.

It is an *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture [HL7CDAR2]* requirement that the rendered narrative **SHALL** be able to stand alone as a source of authenticated information for consuming parties. Clinically relevant content from the CDA body **SHALL NOT** be omitted from the narrative.

There is no canonical markup for specific CDA components, but some conformance requirements apply:

- The narrative block **SHALL** be encapsulated within the text component of the CDA section.
- The narrative contents **SHALL** conform to the requirements specified in the CDA Rendering Specification [NEHT2012s].
- The narrative contents **SHALL** completely and accurately represent the clinical information encoded in the section. Clinical content **SHALL NOT** be omitted from the narrative.
    - In accordance with the requirement to completely represent section contents, elements of type CodeableConcept **SHALL** include an `originalText` or a `displayName` attribute (or both). Where available, the `originalText` **SHOULD** be found in the narrative, otherwise the `displayName` **SHOULD** be found in the narrative.
    - In accordance with the requirement to represent section contents in that section, the narrative of the content for a section **SHALL** be contained in that section or, if appropriate, the narrative of an ancestor section.
- The narrative **SHALL** conform to the content requirements of the CDA specification [HL7CDAR2] and the XML schema.

Clinical judgement is required to determine the appropriate presentation for narrative. We may release additional guidance in this regard.

4 Event Summary hierarchy

Event Summary is defined as:

> A clinical document written by the nominated provider, which contains key pieces of information about an individual's health status and is useful to a wide range of providers in assessing individuals and delivering care. *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*

4.1 Logical hierarchy

The table below provides a hierachical view of the document-level usage scenario Event Summary as a tree structure in a hierarchical table; it is not intended to represent how the data contents are represented in a CDA document.

The logical model Composition (Event Summary), published as a set of FHIR profiles, can be found in the *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*.

A legend is available at the end of this hierarchy.

Logical element	Logical card	Logical type	CDA template
Composition (Event Summary)		Event Summary	ClinicalDocument (Event Summary)
composition-author-role	1..1	Reference(PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
identifier	0..1	Identifier	
status	1..1	code	
type	1..1	CodeableConcept	
subject	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier | My Health Record Patient)	recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) | recordTarget (My Health Record Patient)
encounter	1..1	Reference(Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)
encounter-description	0..1	string	
status	1..1	code	
class	0..1	coding	
type	0..*	CodeableConcept	
subject	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
period	1..1	Period	
reason	0..*	CodeableConcept	
date	1..1	dateTime	
author	1..1	Reference(Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	
title	1..1	string	
attester (Legal Attester)	1..1	BackboneElement	legalAuthenticator
mode	1..1	code	
time	1..1	dateTime	
party	1..1	Reference(Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	
custodian	1..1	Reference(Organization with Mandatory Identifier)	custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier)
section (Event Overview)	1..1	BackboneElement	section (Event Overview)
title	1..1	string	

Logical element					Logical card	Logical type	CDA template
		code			1..1	CodeableConcept	
		text			1..1	Narrative	
		entry			1..1	Reference(Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)
			encounter-description		0..1	string	
			status		1..1	code	
			class		0..1	coding	
			type		0..*	CodeableConcept	
			subject		1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
			period		1..1	Period	
			reason		0..*	CodeableConcept	
	section (Allergies)				0..1	BackboneElement	section (Allergies)
		title			1..1	string	
		code			1..1	CodeableConcept	
		text			1..1	Narrative	
		entry			0..*	Reference(Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)	observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)
			author-related-person		0..1	Reference(Base RelatedPerson)	
			clinicalStatus		0..1	code	
			verificationStatus		1..1	code	
			type		0..1	code	
			code		1..1	CodeableConcept	
			patient		1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
			onset[x]		0..1	dateTime, Age, Period, Range	
			recorder		0..1	Reference(Base Patient | Base Practitioner)	author (Base Patient) | author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
			note		0..*	Annotation	
			reaction		0..*	BackboneElement	
				substance	0..1	CodeableConcept	
				manifestation	1..*	CodeableConcept	
		emptyReason			0..1	CodeableConcept	
	section (Medications)				0..1	BackboneElement	section (Medications)
		title			1..1	string	
		code			1..1	CodeableConcept	
		text			1..1	Narrative	
		entry			0..1	Reference(List of Medicine Changes from an Event)	act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)
			status		1..1	code	
			code		1..1	CodeableConcept	
			subject		1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier | My Health Record Patient)	
			date		0..1	dateTime	
			source		0..1	Reference(Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	
			entry		1..*	BackboneElement	
				change-description	0..1	string	

Logical element						Logical card	Logical type	CDA template
				flag		1..1	CodeableConcept	
				item		1..1	Reference(Summary Statement of Known Medicine)	substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine)
					status	1..1	code	
					category	0..1	CodeableConcept	
					medication[x]	1..1	CodeableConcept	
					effective[x]	0..1	dateTime | Period	
					dateAsserted	0..1	dateTime	
					informationSource	0..*	Reference(Base RelatedPerson | Base Patient | Base Practitioner)	informant (Base RelatedPerson) | informant (Base Patient) | informant (Base Practitioner)
					subject	1..1	Patient with Mandatory Identifier	
					taken	1..1	code	
					reasonNotTaken	0..*	CodeableConcept	
					reasonCode	0..*	CodeableConcept	
					note	0..*	Annotation	
					dosage	1..*	AU Base Dosage	
		entry				0..1	Reference(Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
			status			1..1	code	
			code			1..1	CodeableConcept	
			subject			1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
			effective[x]			0..1	dateTime | Period	
			performer			0..*	Reference(Base Practitioner | Base Organization | Base RelatedPerson | Base Patient)	author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) | participant (author Base Organization) | author (Base RelatedPerson) | author (Base Patient)
			value[x]			1..1	CodeableConcept	
		emptyReason				0..1	CodeableConcept	
	section (Medical History)					0..1	BackboneElement	section (Medical History)
		title				1..1	string	
		code				1..1	CodeableConcept	
		text				1..1	Narrative	
		entry				0..*	Reference(Summary Statement of Condition)	observation (Summary Statement of Condition)
			recorder			0..1	Reference(Base Practitioner | Base Patient | Base RelatedPerson	author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) | author (Base Patient) | author (Base RelatedPerson)
			clinicalStatus			0..1	code	
			verificationStatus			0..1	code	
			code			1..1	CodeableConcept	
			subject			1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
			onset[x]			0..1	dateTime, Age, Period, Range	
			abatement[x]			0..1	dateTime, Age, boolean, Period, Range	
			note			0..*	Annotation	
		entry				0..*	Reference(Summary Statement of Known Procedure)	procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure)

Logical element					Logical card	Logical type	CDA template
			status		1..1	code	
			code		1..1	CodeableConcept	
			subject		1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
			performed[x]		0..1	dateTime, Period	
			note		0..*	Annotation	
		entry			0..1	Reference(Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
			status		1..1	code	
			code		1..1	CodeableConcept	
			subject		1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
			effective[x]		0..1	dateTime | Period	
			performer		0..*	Reference(Base Practitioner | Base Organization | Base RelatedPerson | Base Patient)	author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) | participant (author Base Organization) | author (Base RelatedPerson) | author (Base Patient)
			value[x]		1..1	CodeableConcept	
		emptyReason			0..1	CodeableConcept	
	section (Immunisations)				0..1	BackboneElement	section (Immunisations)
		title			1..1	string	
		code			1..1	CodeableConcept	
		text			1..1	Narrative	
		entry			0..*	Reference(Summary Statement of Vaccine)	observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
			status		1..1	code	
			notGiven		1..1	boolean	
			vaccineCode		1..1	CodeableConcept	
			patient		1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
			date		0..1	dateTime	
			primarySource		1..1	boolean	
			vaccinationProtocol		0..*	BackboneElement	
				doseSequence	0..1	positiveInt	
				doseStatus	1..1	CodeableConcept	
		entry			0..1	Reference(Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
			status		1..1	code	
			code		1..1	CodeableConcept	
			subject		1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
			effective[x]		0..1	dateTime | Period	
			performer		0..*	Reference(Base Practitioner | Base Organization | Base RelatedPerson | Base Patient)	author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) | participant (author Base Organization) | author (Base RelatedPerson) | author (Base Patient)
			value[x]		1..1	CodeableConcept	
		emptyReason			0..1	CodeableConcept	
	section (Diagnostic Investigations)				0..1	BackboneElement	section (Diagnostic Investigations)

Logical element			Logical card	Logical type	CDA template
		title	1..1	string	
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept	
		text	1..1	Narrative	

Note

The column "Logical element" contains the name of that element in the logical model.

The column "Logical card" contains the logical cardinality of that element in the logical model.

The column "Logical type" contains the type of the logical element (hyper-linked to the definition of the [HL7FHIR3] type) in the logical model.

The column "CDA template" contains the title of the corresponding CDA template for that logical element (hyper-linked to CDA mapping table for that template). The convention for the CDA template title is <CDA schema element> (<model name> where the template is not defined in 5 *CDA Header templates*).

5 CDA Header templates

This chapter contains the CDA Header requirements for this implementation guide; these are infrastructure or control requirements that are not sourced from the Event Summary model.

All the definitions in this chapter are sourced from HL7 Clinical Document Architecture, Release 2 [HL7CDAR2].

5.1 ClinicalDocument

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /	
ClinicalDocument	The ClinicalDocument class is the entry point into the CDA R-MIM, and corresponds to the <ClinicalDocument> XML element that is the root element of a CDA document.	1..1	This template **SHALL** be a closed template. All attributes of the ClinicalDocument element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed. All instances of a time value **SHALL** include hours, minutes and a time zone. The CDA document **SHALL** be valid against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema after any additional extensions not in the Australian Digital Health Agency extension namespace have been removed.
ClinicalDocument/**realmCode**	A realmCode signals the imposition of realm-specific constraints. The value identifies the realm in question.	0..*	All attributes of the realmCode element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**typeId**	A technology-neutral explicit reference to the CDA Release 2 specification.	1..1	
ClinicalDocument/typeId/**@extension="POCD_HD000040"**		1..1	The unique identifier for the CDA Release 2 Hierarchical Description.
ClinicalDocument/typeId/**@root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3"**		1..1	The OID for HL7 Registered models.

CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
ClinicalDocument/**templateId**	A templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints. The value provides a unique identifier for the templates in question.	1..*	All attributes of the templateId element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed. Exactly one template identifier **SHALL** indicate the constraints defined in this mapping table and have @root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033" . Exactly one template identifier **SHALL** indicate the constraints defined in the CDA Rendering Specification [NEHT2012s] and have @root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.149". In addition to the template identifiers above, a template identifier is expected for the clinical document model as per ClinicalDocument (Event Summary)). Additional template identifiers may be required by other specifications. Systems are not required to recognise any other template identifiers than the clinical document model templateId in order to understand the document as a [type] but these identifiers may influence how the document must be handled.
ClinicalDocument/**id**	Represents the unique instance identifier of a clinical document.	1..1	All attributes of the id element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor **SHALL NOT** be present. id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
ClinicalDocument/**effectiveTime**	Signifies the document creation time, when the document first came into being. Where the CDA document is a transform from an original document in some other format, the ClinicalDocument.effectiveTime is the time the original document is created.	1..1	All attributes of the effectiveTime element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor **SHALL NOT** be present.
ClinicalDocument/**confidentialityCode/@nullFlavor="NA"**	Codes that identify how sensitive a piece of information is and/or that indicate how the information may be made available or disclosed.	1..1	
ClinicalDocument/**setId**	Represents an identifier that is common across all document revisions.	0..1	All attributes of the setId element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**versionNumber**	An integer value used to version successive replacement documents.	0..1	
ClinicalDocument/versionNumber/**@value**		1..1	
ClinicalDocument/**ext:completionCode**	The lifecycle status of a document.	1..1	All attributes of the completionCode element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor **SHALL NOT** be present. Australian Healthcare Clinical Document Architecture Document Lifecycle Status (required)
ClinicalDocument/**recordTarget**	Represents the medical record that this document belongs to.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the recordTarget element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**author**	Represents the humans and/or machines that authored the document.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the author element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**dataEnterer**	Represents the participant who has transformed a dictated note into text.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the dataEnterer element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**informant**	Represents an informant (or source of information) who provides relevant information, such as the parent of a comatose patient who describes the patient's behavior prior to the onset of coma. Unless otherwise stated, the patient is implicitly the informant.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the informant element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**custodian**	Represents the organization from which the document originates and that is in charge of maintaining the document. The custodian is the steward that is entrusted with the care of the document. Every CDA document has exactly one custodian.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the custodian element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.

CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
ClinicalDocument/**informationRecipient**	Represents a recipient who should receive a copy of the document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the informationRecipient element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**legalAuthenticator**	Represents a participant who has legally authenticated the document.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the legalAuthenticator element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**authenticator**	Represents a participant who has attested to the accuracy of the document, but who does not have privileges to legally authenticate the document. An example would be a resident physician who sees a patient and dictates a note, then later signs it.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the authenticator element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**participant**	Represents a participant not explicitly mentioned by other classes that was somehow involved.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the participant element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**inFulfillmentOf**	Relates the current document to an order this document fulfills (in whole or in part).	0..*	All attributes and elements of the inFulfillmentOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**documentationOf**	Relates the current document to the related event that this document is documentation of.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the documentationOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**relatedDocument**	Relates the current document to a parent document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the relatedDocument element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**authorization**	Relates the current document to consents associated with this document. The consent authorizes or certifies acts specified in the current document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the authorization element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**componentOf**	Relates the current document to the encounter. The current document is a documentation of events that occurred during the encounter.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the componentOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/**component**	Relates the associated document body as a component of the document.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the component element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema **SHALL** be allowed.

5.2 legalAuthenticator

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
legalAuthenticator/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100012"**		1..1	
legalAuthenticator/**time/@value**	Indicates the time of authentication.	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/**signatureCode/@code="S"**	Indicates that the signature has been affixed and is on file.	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/**assignedEntity**	A legalAuthenticator is a person in the role of an assigned entity (AssignedEntity class). An assigned entity is a person assigned to the role by the scoping organization. The entity playing the role is a person (Person class). The entity scoping the role is an organization (Organization class).	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/**id**	A unique identifier for the player entity in this role.	1..1	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/**code**	The specific kind of role.	0..1	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/**addr**	A postal address for the entity (assignedPerson) while in the role (assignedEntity).	0..*	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/**telecom**	A telecommunication address for the entity (assignedPerson) while in the role (assignedEntity).	0..*	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/**assignedPerson**	The entity playing the role (assignedEntity) is a person.	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/**name**	A non-unique textual identifier or moniker for the entity (assignedPerson).	0..*	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The entity identifier of the person.	0..*	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied.
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/**representedOrganization**	The entity scoping the role (assignedEntity).	0..1	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/**name**	A non-unique textual identifier or moniker for the entity (representedOrganization).	0..*	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	A unique identifier for the scoping entity (represented organization) in this role (assignedEntity).	0..*	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied.

5.3 component (Administrative Observations)

This template is referenced by recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier), and recordTarget (My Health Record Patient).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/	
component[admin_obs]	The ES document model contains a number of elements for which there are no equivalent elements at that point in the hierarchical structure of the model mapped into CDA. These elements are considered to be "Administrative Observations" about the encounter, the patient or some other participant. Administrative Observations is a CDA section that is created to hold these elements in preference to creating extensions for them. An observation included in this section is an observation relating to the patient (i.e. recordTarget) unless a reference to a different entity is instantiated as part of that observation (e.g. observation/participant/participantRole).	Cardinality comes from linking element	ClinicalDocument **SHALL** contain at most one Administrative Observation section. The Administrative Observations section **SHALL NOT** be populated if there are no entries or text to go in it.
component[admin_obs]/**section**		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/**templateId**		1..1	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
component[admin_obs]/section/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000"**		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/**id**		0..1	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
component[admin_obs]/section/**code**		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/code/**@code="102.16080"**		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**		1..1	NCTIS Data Components
component[admin_obs]/section/code/**@displayName**		0..1	displayName **SHOULD** be "Administrative Observations".
component[admin_obs]/section/**title="Administrative Observations"**		0..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/**text**		0..1	

6 Document CDA templates

This chapter defines each of the document-level usage scenario models, e.g. Composition (Event Summary), as a `ClinicalDocument` template.

6.1 ClinicalDocument (Event Summary)

The following are the usage scenarios expected:

- A clinical information system (CIS) sends or receives a Event Summary with the My Health Record system
- A contracted service provider (CSP) sends or receives a Event Summary with the My Health Record system
- A CIS sends or receives an Event Summary with another CIS or CSP
- A CSP sends or receives an Event Summary with a CIS or another CSP
- A registered portal or registered repository receives an Event Summary

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /	
Composition	A clinical document written by the nominated provider, which contains key pieces of information about an individual's health status and is useful to a wide range of providers in assessing individuals and delivering care.	0..*	Composition	**ClinicalDocument**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of ClinicalDocument is 1. Although the model indicates that Composition is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. In addition to the template defined in this mapping table, ClinicalDocument **SHALL** conform to the template defined in ClinicalDocument.
				ClinicalDocument/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				ClinicalDocument/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020"**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Composition > **composition-author-role**	A practitioner role that authored this composition. This is not to be confused with who typed in the information.	1..1	Reference(PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	ClinicalDocument/**author**	author **SHALL** conform to the template defined in author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier).
Composition > **identifier**	Logical identifier for the composition, assigned when created. This identifier stays constant as the composition is changed over time.	0..1	Identifier	ClinicalDocument/**setId**	
Composition > **status**	The workflow/clinical status of this composition. The status is a marker for the clinical standing of the document.	1..1	code	ClinicalDocument/**ext:completionCode**	Australian Healthcare Clinical Document Architecture Document Lifecycle Status (required)[1]
Composition > **type**	Specifies the particular kind of composition (e.g. History and Physical, Discharge Summary, Progress Note). This usually equates to the purpose of making the composition.	1..1	CodeableConcept	ClinicalDocument/**code**	
				ClinicalDocument/code/**@code="34133-9"**	
				ClinicalDocument/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"**	LOINC
				ClinicalDocument/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Summary of episode note".
Composition > **subject**	Who or what the composition is about. The composition can be about a person, (patient or healthcare practitioner), a device (e.g. a machine) or even a group of subjects (such as a document about a herd of livestock, or a set of patients that share a common exposure).	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier | My Health Record Patient)	ClinicalDocument/**recordTarget**	When sending to the My Health Record, recordTarget (My Health Record Patient) is expected. recordTarget **SHALL** conform to one of the templates defined in: recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) or recordTarget (My Health Record Patient).
Composition > **encounter**	Describes the clinical encounter or type of care this documentation is associated with.	1..1	Reference(Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	ClinicalDocument/**componentOf**	encompassingEncounter **SHALL** conform to the template defined in encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event).
				ClinicalDocument/componentOf/**encompassingEncounter**	
Composition > **date**	The composition editing time, when the composition was last logically changed by the author.	1..1	dateTime	ClinicalDocument/**author/time**	
Composition > **author**	Identifies who is responsible for the information in the composition, not necessarily who typed it in.	1..1	Reference(Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier	ClinicalDocument/author/assignedAuthor/**assignedPerson**	In CDA an author (Practitioner) assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) is part of composition-author-role (PractitionerRole) author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier).
Composition > **title**	Official human-readable label for the composition.	1..1	string	ClinicalDocument/**title**	
Composition > **attester (Legal Attester)**	A participant who has attested to the accuracy of the composition/document.	1..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/**legalAuthenticator**	legalAuthenticator **SHALL** conform to the template defined in legalAuthenticator.
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > **mode**	The type of attestation the authenticator offers.	1..1	code	n/a	Not mapped separately, the logical mode of "legal" is implicit in legalAuthenticator.
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > **time**	When the composition was attested by the party.	1..1	dateTime	ClinicalDocument/legalAuthenticator/**time/@value**	
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > **party**	Who attested the composition in the specified way.	1..1	Reference(Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	ClinicalDocument/legalAuthenticator/**assignedEntity**	The practitioner **SHALL** have an identifier (legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier).

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Composition > **custodian**	Identifies the organization or group who is responsible for ongoing maintenance of and access to the composition/document information.	1..1	Reference(Organization with Mandatory Identifier)	ClinicalDocument/**custodian**	custodian **SHALL** conform to the template defined in custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier).
Composition > **section (Event Overview)**	Summary information concerning the event.	1..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/**component[event]**	
				ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[event]/**section**	section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in section (Event Overview).
Composition > **section (Allergies)**	Information about allergies or intolerances identified or reported during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/**component[allergy]**	
				ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy]/**section**	section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in section (Allergies).
Composition > **section (Medications)**	Information about medicines that are relevant to the encounter. The medicines included do not constitute a full medications list, but are those medicines that have specifically changed as a result of the encounter, or those medicines directly relevant to the encounter.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/**component[meds]**	
				ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[meds]/**section**	section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in section (Medications).
Composition > **section (Medical History)**	Information about the problems, diagnoses and medical or surgical procedures of a patient. This can include statements that a patient does not have a particular condition.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/**component[med_hist]**	
				ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[med_hist]/**section**	section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in section (Medical History).
Composition > **section (Immunisations)**	Information about vaccinations administered or reported to be administered during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient has not had a particular vaccine administered.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/**component[imms]**	
				ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[imms]/**section**	section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in section (Immunisations).
Composition > **section (Diagnostic Investigations)**	Information about diagnostic tests or procedures performed on or requested for an individual during this encounter, that are considered relevant to the individual's ongoing care. This does not include a full list of diagnostic tests and procedures performed on or request for the individual but only those that are relevant to the encounter.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/**component[diag_inv]**	
				ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[diag_inv]/**section**	section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in section (Diagnostic Investigations).

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to status in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) to support the existing CDA implementation environment. The concept map CompositionStatus (HL7 FHIR) to Australian Healthcare Clinical Document Architecture Document Lifecycle Status provides a mapping between the two value sets.

7 Section CDA templates

This chapter defines the `section` templates referenced by a `ClinicalDocument` template for a document-level model in *6 Document CDA templates*.

7.1 section (Event Overview)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
section	Summary information concerning the event.	Cardinality comes from linking element	BackboneElement	**section**	This section **SHALL** contain an encounter entry (entry[enc]/encounter) that **SHALL** contain an encounter-description (entry[enc]/encounter/text).
				section/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059"**	
section > **title**	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/**title**	
section > **code**	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/**code**	
				section/code/**@code="101.16672"**	
				section/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				section/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Event Overview".
section > **text**	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	Narrative	section/**text**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
section > **entry**	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	Reference(Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	section/**entry[enc]**	
				section/entry[enc]/**encounter**	encounter **SHALL** conform to the template defined in encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event).

7.2 section (Allergies)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
section	Information about allergies or intolerances identified or reported during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies.	Cardinality comes from linking element	BackboneElement	**section**	This section **SHALL** contain at least one entry (entry[adv]) or an emptyReason (entry[adv_empty]) but **SHALL NOT** contain both.
				section/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069"**	
section > **title**	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/**title**	
section > **code**	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/**code**	
				section/code/**@code="48765-2"**	
				section/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"**	LOINC
				section/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Allergies &or adverse reactions".
section > **text**	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	Narrative	section/**text**	
section > **entry**	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	Reference(Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)	section/**entry[adv]**	A statement of allergy or intolerance can be sent to state that a patient does have an allergy or category of allergies or it can be sent to state that they do not e.g. 716186003 |No known allergy| 716184000 |No known latex allergy|. observation **SHALL** conform to the template defined in observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance).
				section/entry[adv]/**observation**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
section > **emptyReason**	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	CodeableConcept	section/**entry[adv_empty]**	
				section/entry[adv_empty]/**observation**	
				section/entry[adv_empty]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				section/entry[adv_empty]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				section/entry[adv_empty]/observation/**code**	
				section/entry[adv_empty]/observation/code/**@code="ASSERTION"**	
				section/entry[adv_empty]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"**	v3 Code System ActCode
				section/entry[adv_empty]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Assertion".
				section/entry[adv_empty]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Non-Clinical Empty Reason (required)[1]

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to status in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to pre-adoption of FHIR Release 4 terminology.

7.3 section (Medications)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
section	Information about medicines that are relevant to the encounter. The medicines included do not constitute a full medications list, but are those medicines that have specifically changed as a result of the encounter, or those medicines directly relevant to the encounter.	Cardinality comes from linking element	BackboneElement	**section**	This section **SHALL** contain an entry (entry) or an emptyReason (entry[meds_empty] but **SHALL NOT** contain both.
				section/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061"**	
section > **title**	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/**title**	
section > **code**	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/**code**	
				section/code/**@code="10160-0"**	
				section/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"**	LOINC
				section/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "History of Medication use Narrative".
section > **text**	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	Narrative	section/**text**	
section > **entry**	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..1	Reference(List of Medicine Changes from an Event | Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	section/**entry[meds]**	A section entry **SHALL** be instantiated as an: • act (section/entry[meds]/act) conforming to act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event) with the same code (section/entry[meds]/act/code/@code) as this section (section/code/@code), or • observation (section/entry[meds]/observation) conforming to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) asserting that there are no known current medications (section/entry[meds]/observation/value/@code="1234391000168107")

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
section > **emptyReason**	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	CodeableConcept	section/**entry[meds_empty]**	
				section/entry[meds_empty]/**observation**	
				section/entry[meds_empty]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				section/entry[meds_empty]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				section/entry[meds_empty]/observation/**code**	
				section/entry[meds_empty]/observation/code/**@code="ASSERTION"**	
				section/entry[meds_empty]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"**	v3 Code System ActCode
				section/entry[meds_empty]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Assertion".
				section/entry[meds_empty]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Non-Clinical Empty Reason (required)[1]

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to status in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to pre-adoption of FHIR Release 4 terminology.

7.4 section (Medical History)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
section	Information about the problems, diagnoses and medical or surgical procedures of a patient. This can include statements that a patient does not have a particular condition.	Cardinality comes from linking element	BackboneElement	**section**	This section **SHALL** contain: • at least one entry (section/entry[med_hist]) or an emptyReason (section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]) This section **SHALL NOT** contain: • both an entry (section/entry[med_hist]) and an emptyReason (section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]) • both an entry (section/entry[med_hist]) that conforms to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) and an entry that conforms to observation (Summary Statement of Condition) or procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure) • more than one entry (section/entry[imms]) that conforms to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
				section/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100041"**	
section > **title**	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/**title="Medical History"**	
section > **code**	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/**code**	
				section/code/**@code="101.16117"**	
				section/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				section/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Medical History".

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
section > **text**	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	Narrative	section/**text**	
section > **entry**	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	Reference(Summary Statement of Condition | Summary Statement of Known Procedure | Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	section/**entry[med_hist]**	A section entry **SHALL** be instantiated as an: • observation (section/entry[med_hist]/observation) conforming to observation (Summary Statement of Condition), or • procedure (section/entry[med_hist]/procedure) conforming to procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure), or • observation (section/entry[meds]/observation) conforming to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) asserting that there is no relevant medical history (entry[med_hist]/observation/value/@code="1224831000168103")
section > **emptyReason**	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	CodeableConcept	section/**entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]**	
				section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]/**observation**	
				section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]/observation/**code**	
				section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]/observation/code/**@code="ASSERTION"**	
				section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"**	v3 Code System ActCode
				section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Assertion".
				section/entry[med_hist_empty_rsn]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Non-Clinical Empty Reason (required)

7.5 section (Immunisations)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
section	Information about vaccinations administered or reported to be administered during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient has not had a particular vaccine administered.	DYNAMIC-CARD	BackboneElement	**section**	This section **SHALL** contain: • an emptyReason (section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]) or at least one entry (section/entry[imms]) This section **SHALL NOT** contain: • both an entry (section/entry[imms]) and an emptyReason (section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]) • both an entry (section/entry[imms]) that conforms to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) and an entry that conforms to substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine) • more than one entry (section/entry[imms]) that conforms to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
				section/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100058"**	
section > **title**	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/**title**	
section > **code**	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/**code**	
				section/code/**@code="11369-6"**	
				section/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"**	LOINC
				section/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Immunization".

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
section > **text**	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	Narrative	section/**text**	
section > **entry**	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	Reference(Summary Statement of Vaccine | Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	section/**entry[imms]**	A section entry **SHALL** be instantiated as either an: • act (section/entry[imms]/act) conforming to substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine), or • observation (section/entry[imms]/observation) conforming to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) asserting no history of vaccination (section/entry[imms]/observation/value/@code="1234401000168109") or no vaccine administered during encounter (entry[imms]/observation/value/@code="1226591000168105")
section > **emptyReason**	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	CodeableConcept	section/**entry[imms_empty_rsn]**	
				section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]/**observation**	
				section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]/observation/**code**	
				section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]/observation/code/**@code="ASSERTION"**	
				section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"**	v3 Code System ActCode
				section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Assertion".
				section/entry[imms_empty_rsn]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Non-Clinical Empty Reason (required)

7.6 section (Diagnostic Investigations)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
section	Information about diagnostic tests or procedures performed on or requested for an individual during this encounter, that are considered relevant to the individual's ongoing care. This does not include a full list of diagnostic tests and procedures performed on or request for the individual but only those that are relevant to the encounter.	Cardinality comes from linking element	BackboneElement	**section**	Editorial Note: The design of this section is incomplete. The intended structure of section.entry and section.emptyReason is not yet available.
				section/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100060"**	
section > **title**	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/**title**	
section > **code**	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/**code**	
				section/code/**@code="30954-2"**	
				section/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"**	LOINC
				section/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Relevant diagnostic tests &or laboratory data".
section > **text**	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	Narrative	section/**text**	

8 Participation CDA templates

This chapter defines the participation templates referenced other templates such as those in 7 *Section CDA templates* and 6 *Document CDA templates*.

8.1 recordTarget (My Health Record Patient)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Patient	**recordTarget**	recordTarget/patientRole/telecom **SHALL NOT** be present. recordTarget/patientRole/addr **SHALL NOT** be present.
				recordTarget/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				recordTarget/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100091"**	
				recordTarget/**patientRole**	
				recordTarget/patientRole/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
				recordTarget/patientRole/**patient**	
Patient > **birthPlace**	The registered place of birth of the patient. A sytem may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	Address	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**birthplace**	
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/birthplace/**place**	
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/birthplace/place/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Patient > **indigenous-status**	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	1..1	Coding	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ethnicGroupCode**	Australian Indigenous Status (required)

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/	
Patient > **closing-the-gap-registration**	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	**entry[close_gap]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[close_gap]/**observation**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**code**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@code="103.32011"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Closing the Gap Copayment Eligibility Indicator".
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**value**	closing-the-gap-registration is "true" if eligible for Closing the Gap co-payment. value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "BL".
Patient > **patient-mothersMaidenName**	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	string	**entry[mothers_name]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[mothers_name]/**observation**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/**code**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/**@code="103.10245"**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Mother's Original Family Name".
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "ST".
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > **identifier**	An identifier for this patient.	1..*	Identifier	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The logical cardinality of identifier is 1..*. In this template the minimum cardinality is satisfied by supplying a National Individual Healthcare Identifier (ext:asEntityIdentifier[ihi]). The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Patient > **identifier (National Individual Healthcare Identifier (IHI))**	National Healthcare Identifier (IHI) for the patient.	1..1	Identifier	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:asEntityIdentifier[ihi]**	In CDA, an Individual Healthcare Identifier (IHI) is sent as the last arc of an OID. For example an IHI of 8003608833357361 would be sent as 1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003608833357361. If present, ext:asEntityIdentifier[ihi]/ext:assigningGeographicArea/ext:name **SHALL** be "National Identifier".
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ext:asEntityIdentifier[ihi]/**@classCode="IDENT"**	
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ext:asEntityIdentifier[ihi]/**ext:id**	ext:id/@extension **SHALL NOT** be present.
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ext:asEntityIdentifier[ihi]/ext:id/**@root**	root **SHALL** be an OID. root **SHALL** have the OID arcs "1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0" preceding the IHI value. The IHI value (last arc of the root OID) prefix **SHALL** be "800360". The IHI value (last arc of the root OID) **SHALL** pass the Luhn algorithm check.
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ext:asEntityIdentifier[ihi]/ext:id/**@assigningAuthorityName="IHI"**	
Patient > **active**	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > **name**	A name associated with the individual.	1..*	Base HumanName	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**name**	At least one name **SHALL** contain a family name (name/family). The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
Patient > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	1..1	code	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**administrativeGenderCode**	AdministrativeGender (required)[1]
Patient > **birthDate**	The date of birth for the individual.	1..1	date	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**birthTime**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/	
Patient > birthDate > **date-accuracy-indicator**	General date accuracy indicator coding.	0..1	Coding	**entry[dob_acc]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[dob_acc]/**observation**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/**code**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/**@code="102.16234"**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Date of Birth Accuracy Indicator".
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". Date Accuracy Indicator (required)
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > birthDate > **patient-birthTime**	The time of day that the Patient was born. This includes the date to ensure that the timezone information can be communicated effectively.	0..1	dateTime	n/a	Not mapped separately, encompassed in patientRole/patient/birthTime.
Patient > **deceased[x]**	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	boolean | dateTime	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:deceasedInd**	Only one of ext:deceasedInd or ext:deceasedTime **SHOULD** be instantiated.
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:deceasedTime**	
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/	
Patient > deceased[x] > **date-accuracy-indicator**	General date accuracy indicator coding.	0..1	Coding	**entry[dod_acc]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[dod_acc]/**observation**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/**code**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/**@code="102.16252"**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Date of Death Accuracy Indicator".
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". Date Accuracy Indicator (required)

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > **maritalStatus**	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	CodeableConcept	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**maritalStatusCode**	maritalStatusCode/originalText or maritalStatusCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Marital Status Codes (extensible)
Patient > **multipleBirth[x]**	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	boolean | integer	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:multipleBirthInd** recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:multipleBirthOrderNumber**	Only one of ext:multipleBirthInd or ext:multipleBirthOrderNumber **SHOULD** be instantiated.
Patient > **contact**	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[pat_contact]**	In CDA, a patient's contact is represented by a participant. participant **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Patient contact).
Patient > **communication**	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	BackboneElement	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**languageCommunication**	
Patient > communication > **language**	The ISO-639-1 alpha 2 code in lower case for the language, optionally followed by a hyphen and the ISO-3166-1 alpha 2 code for the region in upper case; e.g. 'en' for English, or 'en-US' for American English versus 'en-EN' for England English.	1..1	CodeableConcept	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication/**languageCode**	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Common Languages in Australia (extensible)
Patient > communication > **preferred**	Indicates whether or not the patient prefers this language (over other languages he masters up a certain level).	0..1	boolean	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication/**preferenceInd**	
Patient > **generalPractitioner**	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	Reference(Base Organization | Base Practitioner)	**participant[gen_prac]**	participant **SHALL** conform to one of the templates defined in: participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization) or participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner).
Patient > **managingOrganization**	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	recordTarget/patientRole/**providerOrganization**	providerOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in providerOrganization (Base Organization).

[1]This hyperlink resolves to the FHIR Release 4 description due to a technical defect in the FHIR STU3 description of this code system for OID-based systems.

8.2 recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Patient	**recordTarget**	
				recordTarget/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				recordTarget/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100004"**	
				recordTarget/**patientRole**	
				recordTarget/patientRole/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
				recordTarget/patientRole/**patient**	
Patient > **birthPlace**	The registered place of birth of the patient. A sytem may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	Address	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**birthplace**	
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/birthplace/**place**	
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/birthplace/place/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Patient > **indigenous-status**	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	Coding	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ethnicGroupCode**	Australian Indigenous Status (required)

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/	
Patient > **closing-the-gap-registration**	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	**entry[close_gap]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[close_gap]/**observation**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**code**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@code="103.32011"**	
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[close_gap]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Closing the Gap Copayment Eligibility Indicator".
				entry[close_gap]/observation/**value**	closing-the-gap-registration is "true" if eligible for Closing the Gap co-payment. value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "BL".
Patient > **patient-mothersMaidenName**	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	string	**entry[mothers_name]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[mothers_name]/**observation**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/**code**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/**@code="103.10245"**	
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Mother's Original Family Name".
				entry[mothers_name]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "ST".
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > **identifier**	An identifier for this patient.	1..*	Identifier	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Patient > **active**	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > **name**	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	Base HumanName	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Patient > **telecom**	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	recordTarget/patientRole/**telecom**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Patient > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**administrativeGenderCode**	In the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema the minimum occurrence of administrativeGenderCode is 1. Although administrativeGenderCode is required, a sending system may send a patient without gender by instantiating administrativeGenderCode/@nullFlavor="NI". No other nullFlavor value **SHALL** be allowed. AdministrativeGender (required)[1]
Patient > **birthDate**	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	date	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**birthTime**	
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/	
Patient > birthDate > **date-accuracy-indicator**	General date accuracy indicator coding.	0..1	Coding	**entry[dob_acc]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[dob_acc]/**observation**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/**code**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/**@code="102.16234"**	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Date of Birth Accuracy Indicator".
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". Date Accuracy Indicator (required)
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > birthDate > **patient-birthTime**	The time of day that the Patient was born. This includes the date to ensure that the timezone information can be communicated effectively.	0..1	dateTime	n/a	Not mapped separately, encompassed in patientRole/patient/birthTime.
Patient > **deceased[x]**	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	boolean | dateTime	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:deceasedInd**	Only one of ext:deceasedInd or ext:deceasedTime **SHOULD** be instantiated.
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:deceasedTime**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/	
Patient > deceased[x] > **date-accuracy-indicator**	General date accuracy indicator coding.	0..1	Coding	**entry[dod_acc]**	The containing component[admin_obs]/section **SHALL** conform to the template defined in component (Administrative Observations).
				entry[dod_acc]/**observation**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/**code**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/**@code="102.16252"**	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Date of Death Accuracy Indicator".
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". Date Accuracy Indicator (required)
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > **address**	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	Address	recordTarget/patientRole/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Patient > **maritalStatus**	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	CodeableConcept	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**maritalStatusCode**	maritalStatusCode/originalText or maritalStatusCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Marital Status Codes (extensible)
Patient > **multipleBirth[x]**	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	boolean | integer	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:multipleBirthInd**	Only one of ext:multipleBirthInd or ext:multipleBirthOrderNumber **SHOULD** be instantiated.
				recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**ext:multipleBirthOrderNumber**	
Patient > **contact**	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[pat_contact]**	In CDA, a patient's contact is represented by a participant. participant **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Patient contact).
Patient > **communication**	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	BackboneElement	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/**languageCommunication**	
Patient > communication > **language**	The ISO-639-1 alpha 2 code in lower case for the language, optionally followed by a hyphen and the ISO-3166-1 alpha 2 code for the region in upper case; e.g. 'en' for English, or 'en-US' for American English versus 'en-EN' for England English.	1..1	CodeableConcept	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication/**languageCode**	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Common Languages in Australia (extensible)
Patient > communication > **preferred**	Indicates whether or not the patient prefers this language (over other languages he masters up a certain level).	0..1	boolean	recordTarget/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication/**preferenceInd**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Patient > **generalPractitioner**	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	Reference(Base Organization | Base Practitioner)	**participant[gen_prac]**	participant **SHALL** conform to one of the templates defined in: participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization) or participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner).
Patient > **managingOrganization**	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	recordTarget/patientRole/**providerOrganization**	providerOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in providerOrganization (Base Organization).

[1]This hyperlink resolves to the FHIR Release 4 description due to a technical defect in the FHIR STU3 description of this code system for OID-based systems.

8.3 participant (Patient contact)

This template is referenced by recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier), and recordTarget (My Health Record Patient).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > **contact**	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	Cardinality comes from linking element	BackboneElement	**participant[pat_contact]**	The patient's contact **SHALL** have at least: • name (participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name), or • telecom (participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/telecom), or • address (participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/addr), or • organization (participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization)
				participant[pat_contact]/**@typeCode="IND"**	
				participant[pat_contact]/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[pat_contact]/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100056"**	
				participant[pat_contact]/**associatedEntity**	
				participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/**@classCode="CON"**	
				participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Patient > contact > **relationship**	The nature of the relationship between the patient and the contact person.	0..*	CodeableConcept	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/**ext:personalRelationship**	The common pattern Personal Relationship **SHALL** be applied.
				participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ ext:personalRelationship/**ext:code**	ext:code/originalText or ext:code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Contact Relationship Type (extensible)
Patient > contact > **name**	A name associated with the contact person.	0..1	Base HumanName	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Patient > contact > **telecom**	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/**telecom**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Patient > contact > **address**	Address for the contact person.	0..1	Address	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Patient > contact > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the contact person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/ associatedPerson/**ext:administrativeGenderCode**	AdministrativeGender (required)[1]
Patient > contact > **organization**	Organization on behalf of which the contact is acting or for which the contact is working.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/**scopingOrganization**	scopingOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in scopingOrganization (Base Organization).
Patient > contact > **period**	The period during which this contact person or organization is valid to be contacted relating to this patient.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

[1]This hyperlink resolves to the FHIR Release 4 description due to a technical defect in the FHIR STU3 description of this code system for OID-based systems.

8.4 participant (Organization contact)

This template is referenced by participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization), custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier), providerOrganization (Base Organization), representedOrganization (Base Organization), scopingOrganization (Base Organization), and wholeOrganization (Base Organization).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > **contact**	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Organization	**participant[org_contact]**	
				participant[org_contact]/**@typeCode="IND"**	
				participant[org_contact]/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[org_contact]/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100035"**	
				participant[org_contact]/**associatedEntity**	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/**@classCode="CON"**	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/**scopingOrganization**	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/**id**	Organization > contact is represented in CDA by a participant that is scoped by the Organization for which they are a contact. This id **SHALL** hold the same value as the organization this is a contact for (the value in this id element **SHALL** be present in a separate participation). id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Organization > contact > **purpose**	Indicates a purpose for which the contact can be reached.	0..1	CodeableConcept	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/**code**	code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Contact entity type (extensible)[1]
Organization > contact > **name**	A name associated with the contact.	0..1	Base HumanName	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/**associatedPerson**	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
Organization > contact > **telecom**	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the party may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/**telecom**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Organization > contact > **address**	Visiting or postal addresses for the contact.	0..1	Address	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to contact purpose in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to pre-adoption of FHIR Release 4 terminology.

8.5 participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization)

This template is referenced by recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier), and recordTarget (My Health Record Patient).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Organization	**participant[gen_prac]**	Organization **SHALL** have at least: • identifier (participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/name)
				participant[gen_prac]/**@typeCode="PART"**	
				participant[gen_prac]/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[gen_prac]/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100036"**	
				participant[gen_prac]/**functionCode/@code="PCP"**	
				participant[gen_prac]/**associatedEntity**	
				participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**@classCode="PROV"**	
				participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Organization > **identifier**	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Organization > **active**	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > **type**	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..*	CodeableConcept	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**code**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of associatedEntity/code is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. OrganizationType (example)

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Organization > **name**	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/**name[org_name]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by scopingOrganization/name.
Organization > **alias**	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/**name[alias]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by scopingOrganization/name.
Organization > **telecom**	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**telecom**	telecom/@use Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)[1]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Organization > **address**	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**addr**	addr/@use Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)[2]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Organization > **partOf**	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/**asOrganizationPartOf** participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/**wholeOrganization**	wholeOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in wholeOrganization (Base Organization).
Organization > **contact**	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[org_contact]**	participant[org_contact] **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact).

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in ContactPoint due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map v3 map for ContactPointUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

8.6 participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner)

This template is referenced by recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier), and recordTarget (My Health Record Patient).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Practitioner	**participant[gen_prac]**	Practitioner **SHALL** have at least: • identifier (participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name)
				participant[gen_prac]/**@typeCode="PART"**	
				participant[gen_prac]/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[gen_prac]/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037"**	
				participant[gen_prac]/**functionCode/@code="PCP"**	
				participant[gen_prac]/**associatedEntity**	
				participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**@classCode="PROV"**	
				participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
				participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**code**	The cardinality of code **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..1. Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred)
Practitioner > **identifier**	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	0..*	Identifier	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Practitioner > **active**	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **name**	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	Base HumanName	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Practitioner > **telecom**	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**telecom**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Practitioner > **address**	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	Address	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Practitioner > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **birthDate**	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	date	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **qualification**	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list. **instantiation choices:** If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then qualification is expected to be instantiated as ext:asQualifications/@classCode="QUAL". The common pattern Qualification **SHALL** be applied. If more information can be captured than a narrative list then qualification is expected to be instantiated as ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and **SHALL** conform to the template defined in ext:coverage2 (Practitioner qualification).
Practitioner > **communication**	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	participant[gen_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/**ext:languageCommunication**	The common pattern Language Communication **SHALL** be applied.

8.7 author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
PractitionerRole	A specific set of Roles/Locations/specialties/services that a practitioner may perform at an organization for a period of time.	Cardinality comes from linking element	PractitionerRole	**author**	
				author/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006"**	
				author/**assignedAuthor**	
				author/assignedAuthor/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
PractitionerRole > **identifier**	Business identifiers for practitioner in a role.	0..*	Identifier	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are included in assignedPerson/ext:asEntity-Identifier. When sending to the My Health Record, an HPI-I is expected. The cardinality of ext:asEntityIdentifier **SHALL** be interpreted as 1..*. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
PractitionerRole > **active**	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **period**	The period during which the person is authorized to act as a practitioner in these role(s) for the organization.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **practitioner**	Practitioner that is able to provide the defined services for the organation.	1..1	Reference(Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	author/assignedAuthor/**assignedPerson**	assignedPerson **SHALL** conform to the template defined in assigned-Person (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier).
PractitionerRole > **organization**	The organization where the Practitioner performs the roles associated.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	author/assignedAuthor/**representedOrganization**	representedOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in representedOrganization (Base Organization).

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
PractitionerRole > **code**	Roles which this practitioner is authorized to perform for the organization.	0..*	CodeableConcept	author/assignedAuthor/**code**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of assignedAuthor/code is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. A code equivalent to the provider's professional role, e.g. 159011008 |Community pharmacist| is expected. code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred) or Practitioner Role (preferred)[1]
PractitionerRole > **specialty**	Specific specialty of the practitioner.	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **location**	The location(s) at which this practitioner provides care.	0..*	Reference(Location)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **healthcareService**	The list of healthcare services that this worker provides for this role's Organization/Location(s).	0..*	Reference(HealthcareService)	n/a	Not currently mapped to CDA. See Known issues.
PractitionerRole > **telecom**	Contact details that are specific to the role/location/service.	0..*	ContactPoint	author/assignedAuthor/**telecom**	In CDA the telecom for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are included in assignedAuthor/telecom. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
PractitionerRole > **availableTime**	A collection of times that the Service Site is available.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **notAvailable**	The HealthcareService is not available during this period of time due to the provided reason.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **availabilityExceptions**	A description of site availability exceptions, e.g. public holiday availability. Succinctly describing all possible exceptions to normal site availability as details in the available Times and not available Times.	0..1	string	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

[1]Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on code in PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the coding part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

8.8 custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Organization	**custodian**	
				custodian/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				custodian/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002"**	
				custodian/**assignedCustodian**	
				custodian/assignedCustodian/**representedCustodianOrganization**	
				custodian/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Organization > **identifier**	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	1..*	Identifier	custodian/assignedCustodian/ representedCustodianOrganization/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	When sending to the My Health Record, an HPI-O is expected. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Organization > **active**	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > **type**	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > **name**	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	custodian/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/**name**	
Organization > **alias**	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Organization > **telecom**	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	custodian/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/**telecom**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of representedCustodianOrganization/telecom is 1. Although the model indicates that telecom is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. telecom/@use Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)[1]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Organization > **address**	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	custodian/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/**addr**	addr/@use Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)[2]. In CDA the maximum occurrences of representedCustodianOrganization/addr is 1. Although the model indicates that address is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Organization > **partOf**	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > **contact**	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[org_contact]**	participant[org_contact] **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact).

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in ContactPoint due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map v3 map for ContactPointUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

8.9 informant (Base Patient)

This template is referenced by substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking element	
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Patient	**informant**	Patient **SHALL** have at least: • name (informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name), or • identifier (informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier)
				informant/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				informant/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100051"**	
				informant/**assignedEntity**	
				informant/assignedEntity/**id**	informant (patient) is represented in CDA by an informant with the same id as the patient that is the subject of this document. This id **SHALL** hold the same value as patientRole/id.
				informant/assignedEntity/**code**	
				informant/assignedEntity/code/**@code="ONESELF"**	
				informant/assignedEntity/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"**	v3 Code System RoleCode
				informant/assignedEntity/**assignedPerson**	
Patient > **birthPlace**	The registered place of birth of the patient. A sytem may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	Address	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/birthplace/place/addr.
Patient > **indigenous-status**	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	Coding	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/ethnicGroupCode.
Patient > **closing-the-gap-registration**	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in entry[close_gap]/observation/value.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Patient > **patient-mothersMaidenName**	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	string	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in entry[mothers_name]/observation/value.
Patient > **identifier**	An identifier for this patient.	0..*	Identifier	informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Patient > **active**	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > **name**	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	Base HumanName	informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
Patient > **telecom**	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	informant/assignedEntity/**telecom**	When sending to the My Health Record, telecom is not expected to be sent. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Patient > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/**ext:administrativeGenderCode**	AdministrativeGender (required)[1]
Patient > **birthDate**	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	date	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/birthTime.
Patient > **deceased[x]**	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	boolean | dateTime	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedTime or patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedInd.
Patient > **address**	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	Address	informant/assignedEntity/**addr**	When sending to the My Health Record, address is not expected to be sent. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Patient > **maritalStatus**	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/maritalStatusCode.
Patient > **multipleBirth[x]**	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	boolean | integer	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthInd or patientRole/patient/multipleBirthOrderNumber.
Patient > **contact**	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > **communication**	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/languageCommunication.
Patient > **generalPractitioner**	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	Reference(Base Organization | Base Practitioner)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Patient > **managingOrganization**	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	Reference(Base Or-ganization)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

[1]This hyperlink resolves to the FHIR Release 4 description due to a technical defect in the FHIR STU3 description of this code system for OID-based systems.

8.10 informant (Base RelatedPerson)

This template is referenced by substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
RelatedPerson	Information about a person that is involved in the care for a patient, but who is not the target of healthcare, nor has a formal responsibility in the care process.	Cardinality comes from linking element	RelatedPerson	**informant**	RelatedPerson **SHALL** have at least: • name (informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/name), or • identifier (informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • relationship (informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship)
				informant/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				informant/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100052"**	
				informant/**relatedEntity**	
				informant/relatedEntity/**@classCode="PRS"**	
				informant/relatedEntity/**code**	The cardinality of code **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..1.
				informant/relatedEntity/**relatedPerson**	
RelatedPerson > **identifier**	Identifier for a person within a particular scope.	0..*	Identifier	informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
RelatedPerson > **active**	Whether this related person record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
RelatedPerson > **patient**	The patient this person is related to.	1..1	Reference(Base Patient)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient.
RelatedPerson > **relationship**	The nature of the relationship between a patient and the related person.	0..1	CodeableConcept	informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/**ext:personalRelationship**	The common pattern Personal Relationship **SHALL** be applied.
				informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship/**ext:code**	ext:code/originalText or ext:code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Related Person Relationship Type (extensible)

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
RelatedPerson > **name**	A name associated with the person.	0..*	Base HumanName	informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
RelatedPerson > **telecom**	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	informant/relatedEntity/**telecom**	
RelatedPerson > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/**ext:administrativeGenderCode**	AdministrativeGender (required)[1]
RelatedPerson > **birthDate**	The date on which the related person was born.	0..1	date	informant/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/**ext:birthTime**	
RelatedPerson > **address**	Address where the related person can be contacted or visited.	0..*	Address	informant/relatedEntity/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
RelatedPerson > **period**	The period of time that this relationship is considered to be valid. If there are no dates defined, then the interval is unknown.	0..1	Period	n/a	Not mapped separately, implicit in ext:personalRelationship/ext:effectiveTime.

[1]This hyperlink resolves to the FHIR Release 4 description due to a technical defect in the FHIR STU3 description of this code system for OID-based systems.

8.11 informant (Base Practitioner)

This template is referenced by substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Practitioner	**informant**	Practitioner **SHALL** have at least: • identifier (informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name)
				informant/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				informant/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100053"**	
				informant/**assignedEntity**	
				informant/assignedEntity/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
				informant/assignedEntity/**code**	The cardinality of code **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..1. Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred)
				informant/assignedEntity/**assignedPerson**	
Practitioner > **identifier**	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	0..*	Identifier	informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Practitioner > **active**	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **name**	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	Base HumanName	informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
Practitioner > **telecom**	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	informant/assignedEntity/**telecom**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Practitioner > **address**	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	Address	informant/assignedEntity/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Practitioner > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **birthDate**	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	date	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **qualification**	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list. **instantiation choices:** If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then qualification is expected to be instantiated as ext:asQualifications/@classCode="QUAL". The common pattern Qualification **SHALL** be applied. If more information can be captured than a narrative list then qualification is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and **SHALL** conform to the template defined in ext:coverage2 (Practitioner qualification): • qualification for a Practitioner **SHALL** be instantiated in the same section e.g. qualification for an AllergyIntolerance recorder is expected to be instantiated as ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy]/section/ext:coverage2[prac_qual], or • qualification for a CDA Header Practitioner (e.g. ClinicalDocument author) **SHALL** be instantiated as ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ext:coverage2[prac_qual]
Practitioner > **communication**	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	informant/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/**ext:languageCommunication**	The common pattern Language Communication **SHALL** be applied.

8.12 author (Base Patient)

This template is referenced by observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance), and observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Patient	**author**	Patient **SHALL** have at least: • name (author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/name), or • identifier (author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier)
				author/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100084"**	
				author/**assignedAuthor**	
				author/assignedAuthor/**id**	author (patient) is represented in CDA by an author with the same id as the patient that is the subject of this document. This id **SHALL** hold the same value as patientRole/id.
				author/assignedAuthor/**code**	
				author/assignedAuthor/code/**@code="ONESELF"**	
				author/assignedAuthor/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"**	v3 Code System RoleCode
				author/assignedAuthor/**assignedPerson**	
Patient > **birthPlace**	The registered place of birth of the patient. A sytem may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	Address	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/birthPlace/place/addr.
Patient > **indigenous-status**	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	Coding	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/ethnicGroupCode.
Patient > **closing-the-gap-registration**	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in entry[close_gap]/observation/value.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Patient > **patient-mothersMaiden-Name**	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	string	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in entry[mothers_name]/observation/value.
Patient > **identifier**	An identifier for this patient.	0..*	Identifier	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	When sending to the My Health Record, an IHI is expected. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Patient > **active**	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > **name**	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	Base HumanName	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
Patient > **telecom**	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	author/assignedAuthor/**telecom**	When sending to the My Health Record, telecom is not expected to be sent. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Patient > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:administrativeGenderCode**	AdministrativeGender (required)[1]
Patient > **birthDate**	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	date	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/birthTime.
Patient > **deceased[x]**	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	boolean | dateTime	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedTime or patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedInd.
Patient > **address**	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	Address	author/assignedAuthor/**addr**	When sending to the My Health Record, address is not expected to be sent. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Patient > **maritalStatus**	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/maritalStatusCode.
Patient > **multipleBirth[x]**	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	boolean | integer	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthInd or patientRole/patient/multipleBirthOrderNumber.
Patient > **contact**	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > **communication**	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole/patient/languageCommunication.
Patient > **generalPractitioner**	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	Reference(Base Organization | Base Practitioner)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Patient > **managingOrganization**	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

[1]This hyperlink resolves to the FHIR Release 4 description due to a technical defect in the FHIR STU3 description of this code system for OID-based systems.

8.13 author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary), and act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
PractitionerRole	A specific set of Roles/Locations/specialties/services that a practitioner may perform at an organization for a period of time.	Cardinality comes from linking element	PractitionerRole	**author**	
				author/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006"**	
				author/**assignedAuthor**	
				author/assignedAuthor/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
PractitionerRole > **identifier**	Business identifiers for practitioner in a role.	0..*	Identifier	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are included in assignedPerson/ext:asEntity-Identifier. When sending to the My Health Record, an HPI-I is expected. The cardinality of ext:asEntityIdentifier **SHALL** be interpreted as 1..*. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
PractitionerRole > **active**	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **period**	The period during which the person is authorized to act as a practitioner in these role(s) for the organization.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **practitioner**	Practitioner that is able to provide the defined services for the organation.	1..1	Reference(Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	author/assignedAuthor/**assignedPerson**	assignedPerson **SHALL** conform to the template defined in assigned-Person (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier).
PractitionerRole > **organization**	The organization where the Practitioner performs the roles associated.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	author/assignedAuthor/**representedOrganization**	representedOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in representedOrganization (Base Organization).

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
PractitionerRole > **code**	Roles which this practitioner is authorized to perform for the organization.	0..*	CodeableConcept	author/assignedAuthor/**code**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of assignedAuthor/code is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. A code equivalent to the provider's professional role, e.g. 159011008 |Community pharmacist| is expected. code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred) or Practitioner Role (preferred)[1]
PractitionerRole > **specialty**	Specific specialty of the practitioner.	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **location**	The location(s) at which this practitioner provides care.	0..*	Reference(Location)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **healthcareService**	The list of healthcare services that this worker provides for this role's Organization/Location(s).	0..*	Reference(HealthcareService)	n/a	Not currently mapped to CDA. See Known issues.
PractitionerRole > **telecom**	Contact details that are specific to the role/location/service.	0..*	ContactPoint	author/assignedAuthor/**telecom**	In CDA the telecom for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are included in assignedAuthor/telecom. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
PractitionerRole > **availableTime**	A collection of times that the Service Site is available.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **notAvailable**	The HealthcareService is not available during this period of time due to the provided reason.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **availabilityExceptions**	A description of site availability exceptions, e.g. public holiday availability. Succinctly describing all possible exceptions to normal site availability as details in the available Times and not available Times.	0..1	string	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

[1]Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on code in PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the coding part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

8.14 author (Base PractitionerRole)

This template is referenced by observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance), and observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
PractitionerRole	A specific set of Roles/Locations/specialties/services that a practitioner may perform at an organization for a period of time.	Cardinality comes from linking element	PractitionerRole	**author**	PractitionerRole **SHALL** have at least: • practitioner role or practitioner identifier (author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • practitioner name (author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/name)
				author/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100085"**	
				author/**assignedAuthor**	
				author/assignedAuthor/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
PractitionerRole > **identifier**	Business identifiers for practitioner in a role.	0..*	Identifier	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are included in assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier. When sending to the My Health Record, an HPI-I is expected. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
PractitionerRole > **active**	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **period**	The period during which the person is authorized to act as a practitioner in these role(s) for the organization.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **practitioner**	Practitioner that is able to provide the defined services for the organation.	0..1	Reference(Base Practitioner)	author/assignedAuthor/**assignedPerson**	assignedPerson **SHALL** conform to the template defined in assignedPerson (Base Practitioner).
PractitionerRole > **organization**	The organization where the Practitioner performs the roles associated.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	author/assignedAuthor/**representedOrganization**	representedOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in representedOrganization (Base Organization).

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
PractitionerRole > **code**	Roles which this practitioner is authorized to perform for the organization.	0..*	CodeableConcept	author/assignedAuthor/**code**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of assignedAuthor/code is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. A code equivalent to the provider's professional role, e.g. 159011008 |Community pharmacist| is expected. Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred) or Practitioner Role (preferred)[1]
PractitionerRole > **specialty**	Specific specialty of the practitioner.	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **location**	The location(s) at which this practitioner provides care.	0..*	Reference(Location)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **healthcareService**	The list of healthcare services that this worker provides for this role's Organization/Location(s).	0..*	Reference(HealthcareService)	n/a	Not currently mapped to CDA. See Known issues.
PractitionerRole > **telecom**	Contact details that are specific to the role/location/service.	0..*	ContactPoint	author/assignedAuthor/**telecom**	In CDA the telecom for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are included in assignedAuthor/telecom. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
PractitionerRole > **availableTime**	A collection of times that the Service Site is available.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **notAvailable**	The HealthcareService is not available during this period of time due to the provided reason.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > **availabilityExceptions**	A description of site availability exceptions, e.g. public holiday availability. Succinctly describing all possible exceptions to normal site availability as details in the available Times and not available Times.	0..1	string	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

[1]Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on code in PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the coding part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

8.15 author (Base RelatedPerson)

This template is referenced by observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance), and observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
RelatedPerson	Information about a person that is involved in the care for a patient, but who is not the target of healthcare, nor has a formal responsibility in the care process.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	RelatedPerson	**author**	RelatedPerson **SHALL** have at least: • name (author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/name), or • identifier (author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • relationship (author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:personalRelationship)
				author/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100083"**	
				author/**assignedAuthor**	
				author/assignedAuthor/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
				author/assignedAuthor/**code**	
				author/assignedAuthor/code/**@code="AGNT"**	
				author/assignedAuthor/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.110"**	v3 Code System RoleClass
				author/assignedAuthor/**assignedPerson**	
RelatedPerson > **identifier**	Identifier for a person within a particular scope.	0..*	Identifier	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	When sending to the My Health Record, an IHI is expected. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
RelatedPerson > **active**	Whether this related person record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
RelatedPerson > **patient**	The patient this person is related to.	1..1	Reference(Base Patient)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in patientRole.
RelatedPerson > **relationship**	The nature of the relationship between a patient and the related person.	0..1	CodeableConcept	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:personalRelationship**	The common pattern Personal Relationship **SHALL** be applied.
				author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:personalRelationship/**ext:code**	ext:code/originalText or ext:code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Related Person Relationship Type (extensible)
RelatedPerson > **name**	A name associated with the person.	0..*	Base HumanName	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
RelatedPerson > **telecom**	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	author/assignedAuthor/**telecom**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
RelatedPerson > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:administrativeGenderCode**	AdministrativeGender (required)[1]
RelatedPerson > **birthDate**	The date on which the related person was born.	0..1	date	author/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/**ext:birthTime**	
RelatedPerson > **address**	Address where the related person can be contacted or visited.	0..*	Address	author/assignedAuthor/**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
RelatedPerson > **period**	The period of time that this relationship is considered to be valid. If there are no dates defined, then the interval is unknown.	0..1	Period	n/a	Not mapped separately, implicit in ext:personalRelationship/ext:effectiveTime.

[1]This hyperlink resolves to the FHIR Release 4 description due to a technical defect in the FHIR STU3 description of this code system for OID-based systems.

8.16 participant (author Base Organization)

This template is referenced by observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Organization	**participant[aut]**	Organization **SHALL** have at least: • identifier (participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ext:name)
				participant[aut]/**@typeCode="AUT"**	
				participant[aut]/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[aut]/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100088"**	
				participant[aut]/**participantRole**	If participantRole/@classCode is present, it **SHALL** be "ASSIGNED".
				participant[aut]/participantRole/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
				participant[aut]/participantRole/**scopingEntity**	
				participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/**@classCode="ORG"**	
Organization > **identifier**	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	When sending to the My Health Record, an HPI-O is expected. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Organization > **active**	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > **type**	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..*	CodeableConcept	participant[aut]/participantRole/**code**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of participantRole/code is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. OrganizationType (example)
Organization > **name**	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/**ext:name[org_name]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by scopingEntity/name.
Organization > **alias**	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/**ext:name[alias]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by scopingEntity/name.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Organization > **telecom**	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[aut]/participantRole/**telecom**	telecom/@use Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)[1]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Organization > **address**	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	participant[aut]/participantRole/**addr**	addr/@use Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)[2]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Organization > **partOf**	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/**ext:asOrganizationPartOf**	Organization partOf **SHALL** have at least: • an identifier (ext:asOrganizationPartOf/ext:wholeEntity/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • a name (ext:asOrganizationPartOf/ext:wholeEntity/ext:name)
				participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ ext:asOrganizationPartOf/**ext:wholeEntity**	
				participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ext:asOrganizationPartOf/ ext:wholeEntity/**ext:id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
				participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ext:asOrganizationPartOf/ ext:wholeEntity/**ext:code**	In this template the cardinality of ext:wholeEntity/ext:code **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..1. ext:code/originalText or ext:code/displayName **SHALL** be included. OrganizationType (example)
				participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ext:asOrganizationPartOf/ ext:wholeEntity/**ext:name**	In this template the cardinality of ext:wholeEntity/ext:name **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..*.
				participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ext:asOrganizationPartOf/ ext:wholeEntity/**ext:telecom**	In this template the cardinality of ext:wholeEntity/ext:telecom **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..*. ext:telecom/@use Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)[3]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
				participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ext:asOrganizationPartOf/ ext:wholeEntity/**ext:addr**	In this template the cardinality of ext:wholeEntity/ext:addr **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..*. ext:addr/@use Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)[4]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
				participant[aut]/participantRole/scopingEntity/ext:asOrganizationPartOf/ ext:wholeEntity/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	In this template the cardinality of ext:wholeEntity/ext:asEntityIdentifier **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..*. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > **contact**	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[org_contact]**	participant[org_contact] **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact).

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in ContactPoint due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map v3 map for ContactPointUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[3]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in ContactPoint due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map v3 map for ContactPointUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[4]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

9 Entity CDA templates

This chapter contains the entity templates referenced by a participation template in 8 *Participation CDA templates*.

9.1 providerOrganization (Base Organization)

This template is referenced by recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier), and recordTarget (My Health Record Patient).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole/	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Organization	**providerOrganization**	Organization **SHALL** have at least: • identifier (providerOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (providerOrganization/name)
				providerOrganization/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				providerOrganization/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100034"**	
				providerOrganization/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Organization > **identifier**	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	providerOrganization/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Organization > **active**	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Organization > **type**	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..*	CodeableConcept	providerOrganization/**standardIndustryClassCode**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of providerOrganization/standardIndustryClassCode is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. standardIndustryClassCode/originalText or standardIndustryClassCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. OrganizationType (example)
Organization > **name**	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	providerOrganization/**name[org_name]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by providerOrganization/name.
Organization > **alias**	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	providerOrganization/**name[alias]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by providerOrganization/name.
Organization > **telecom**	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	providerOrganization/**telecom**	telecom/@use Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)[1]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Organization > **address**	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	providerOrganization/**addr**	addr/@use Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)[2]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Organization > **partOf**	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	providerOrganization/**asOrganizationPartOf** providerOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/**wholeOrganization**	wholeOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in wholeOrganization (Base Organization).
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > **contact**	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[org_contact]**	participant[org_contact] **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact).

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in ContactPoint due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map v3 map for ContactPointUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

9.2 representedOrganization (Base Organization)

This template is referenced by author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier), and author (Base PractitionerRole).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Organization	**representedOrganization**	Organization **SHALL** have at least: • name (representedOrganization/name), or • identifier (representedOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier)
				representedOrganization/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				representedOrganization/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039"**	
				representedOrganization/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Organization > **identifier**	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	representedOrganization/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Organization > **active**	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > **type**	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..*	CodeableConcept	representedOrganization/**standardIndustryClassCode**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of representedOrganization/standardIndustryClassCode is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. standardIndustryClassCode/originalText or standardIndustryClassCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. OrganizationType (example)
Organization > **name**	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	representedOrganization/**name[org_name]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by representedOrganization/name.
Organization > **alias**	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	representedOrganization/**name[alias]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by representedOrganization/name.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Organization > **telecom**	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	representedOrganization/**telecom**	telecom/@use Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required). Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Organization > **address**	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	representedOrganization/**addr**	addr/@use Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)[1]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Organization > **partOf**	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	representedOrganization/**asOrganizationPartOf** representedOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/**wholeOrganization**	wholeOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in wholeOrganization (Base Organization).
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > **contact**	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[org_contact]**	participant[org_contact] **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact).

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

9.3 assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)

This template is referenced by author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Practitioner	**assignedPerson**	
				assignedPerson/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				assignedPerson/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100040"**	
Practitioner > **identifier**	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	1..*	Identifier	assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	When sending to the My Health Record, an HPI-I is expected. The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Practitioner > **active**	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **name**	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	Base HumanName	assignedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
Practitioner > **telecom**	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	**telecom**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Practitioner > **address**	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	Address	**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Practitioner > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **birthDate**	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	date	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Practitioner > **qualification**	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list. **instantiation choices:** If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then qualification is expected to be instantiated as assignedPerson/ext:asQualifications/@classCode="QUAL". The common pattern Qualification **SHALL** be applied. If more information can be captured than a narrative list then qualification is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and **SHALL** conform to the template defined in ext:coverage2 (Practitioner qualification): • qualification for a Practitioner **SHALL** be instantiated in the same section e.g. qualification for an AllergyIntolerance recorder is expected to be instantiated as ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy]/section/ext:coverage2[prac_qual], or • qualification for a CDA Header Practitioner (e.g. ClinicalDocument author) **SHALL** be instantiated as ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ext:coverage2[prac_qual]
Practitioner > **communication**	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	assignedPerson/**ext:languageCommunication**	The common pattern Language Communication **SHALL** be applied.

9.4 assignedPerson (Base Practitioner)

This template is referenced by author (Base PractitionerRole).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Practitioner	**assignedPerson**	Practitioner **SHALL** have at least: • identifier (assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (assignedPerson/name)
				assignedPerson/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				assignedPerson/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100086"**	
Practitioner > **identifier**	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	0..*	Identifier	assignedPerson/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Practitioner > **active**	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **name**	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	Base HumanName	assignedPerson/**name**	The model Base HumanName is not applied to name. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Base HumanName.
Practitioner > **telecom**	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	**telecom**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Practitioner > **address**	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	Address	**addr**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Practitioner > **gender**	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > **birthDate**	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	date	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Practitioner > **qualification**	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list. **instantiation choices:** If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then qualification is expected to be instantiated as assignedPerson/ext:asQualifications/@classCode="QUAL". The common pattern Qualification **SHALL** be applied. If more information can be captured than a narrative list then qualification is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and **SHALL** conform to the template defined in ext:coverage2 (Practitioner qualification): • qualification for a Practitioner **SHALL** be instantiated in the same section e.g. qualification for an AllergyIntolerance recorder is expected to be instantiated as ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy]/section/ext:coverage2[prac_qual], or • qualification for a CDA Header Practitioner (e.g. ClinicalDocument author) **SHALL** be instantiated as ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ext:coverage2[prac_qual]
Practitioner > **communication**	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	assignedPerson/**ext:languageCommunication**	The common pattern Language Communication **SHALL** be applied.

9.5 wholeOrganization (Base Organization)

This template is referenced by participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization), providerOrganization (Base Organization), representedOrganization (Base Organization), scopingOrganization (Base Organization),and wholeOrganization (Base Organization).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Organization	**wholeOrganization**	Organization **SHALL** have at least: • name (wholeOrganization/name), or • identifier (wholeOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier)
				wholeOrganization/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				wholeOrganization/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100087"**	
				wholeOrganization/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Organization > **identifier**	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	wholeOrganization/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Organization > **active**	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > **type**	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..*	CodeableConcept	wholeOrganization/**standardIndustryClassCode**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of wholeOrganization/standardIndustryClassCode is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. standardIndustryClassCode/originalText or standardIndustryClassCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. OrganizationType (example)
Organization > **name**	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	wholeOrganization/**name[org_name]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by wholeOrganization/name.
Organization > **alias**	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	wholeOrganization/**name[alias]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by wholeOrganization/name.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Organization > **telecom**	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	wholeOrganization/**telecom**	telecom/@use Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)[1]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Organization > **address**	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	wholeOrganization/**addr**	addr/@use Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)[2]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Organization > **partOf**	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	wholeOrganization/**asOrganizationPartOf** wholeOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/**wholeOrganization**	wholeOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/wholeOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in wholeOrganization (Base Organization).
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > **contact**	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[org_contact]**	participant[org_contact] **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact).

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in ContactPoint due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map v3 map for ContactPointUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

9.6 scopingOrganization (Base Organization)

This template is referenced by participant (Patient contact).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Organization	**scopingOrganization**	Organization **SHALL** have at least: • name (scopingOrganization/name), or • identifier (scopingOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier)
				scopingOrganization/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				scopingOrganization/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100089"**	
				scopingOrganization/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Organization > **identifier**	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	scopingOrganization/**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	The common pattern Entity Identifier **SHALL** be applied. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Organization > **active**	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > **type**	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..*	CodeableConcept	scopingOrganization/**standardIndustryClassCode**	In CDA the maximum occurrences of scopingOrganization/standardIndustryClassCode is 1. Although the model indicates that code is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. standardIndustryClassCode/originalText or standardIndustryClassCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. OrganizationType (example)
Organization > **name**	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	scopingOrganization/**name[org_name]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by scopingOrganization/name.
Organization > **alias**	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	scopingOrganization/**name[alias]**	In CDA name and alias are represented by scopingOrganization/name.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Organization > **telecom**	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	scopingOrganization/**telecom**	telecom/@use Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)[1]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: ContactPoint.
Organization > **address**	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	scopingOrganization/**addr**	addr/@use Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)[2]. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Address | AU Base Address.
Organization > **partOf**	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Base Organization)	scopingOrganization/**asOrganizationPartOf** scopingOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/**wholeOrganization**	wholeOrganization **SHALL** conform to the template defined in wholeOrganization (Base Organization).
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > **contact**	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	**participant[org_contact]**	participant[org_contact] **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact).

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in ContactPoint due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map v3 map for ContactPointUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

10 Act CDA templates

This chapter contains the entry-level templates, called acts (machine readable structured content), referenced by other templates such as those in 7 *Section CDA templates*.

10.1 encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)

This template is referenced by ClinicalDocument (Event Summary).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/componentOf/	
Encounter	An interaction between a patient and healthcare provider(s) for the purpose of providing healthcare service(s) or assessing the health status of a patient.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Encounter	**encompassingEncounter**	
				encompassingEncounter/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				encompassingEncounter/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064"**	
				encompassingEncounter/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID. This id **SHALL** hold the same value as encounter/id.
Encounter > **encounter-description**	Description, overview or summary of a clinical event and its reasons.	0..1	string	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in encounter/text.
Encounter > **status**	planned | arrived | triaged | in-progress | onleave | finished | cancelled +.	1..1	code	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in encounter/statusCode.
Encounter > **class**	inpatient | outpatient | ambulatory | emergency +.	0..1	Coding	encompassingEncounter/**code**	This code **SHALL** hold the same value as encounter/code. ActEncounterCode (required)
Encounter > **type**	Specific type of encounter (e.g. e-mail consultation, surgical day-care, skilled nursing, rehabilitation).	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Encounter > **subject**	The patient ro group present at the encounter.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patientRole.
Encounter > **period**	The start and end time of the encounter.	1..1	Period	encompassingEncounter/**effectiveTime**	This effectiveTime **SHALL** hold the same value as encounter/effectiveTime.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Encounter > **reason**	Reason the encounter takes place, expressed as a code. For admissions, this can be used for a coded admission diagnosis.	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/value.

10.2 encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)

This template is referenced by section (Event Overview).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Encounter	An interaction between a patient and healthcare provider(s) for the purpose of providing healthcare service(s) or assessing the health status of a patient.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Encounter	**encounter**	This encounter provides additional information about the Composition encounter (encompassingEncounter). encounter/id will hold the same value as encompassingEncounter/id to link the two encounter classes.
				encounter/**@classCode="ENC"**	
				encounter/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				encounter/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				encounter/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062"**	
				encounter/**id**	id/@root **SHALL** be present and it **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
Encounter > **encounter-description**	Description, overview or summary of a clinical event and its reasons.	0..1	string	encounter/**text**	
Encounter > **status**	planned | arrived | triaged | in-progress | onleave | finished | cancelled +.	1..1	code	encounter/**statusCode**	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). statusCode/@code **SHOULD** be "completed". Encounter Act Status HL7 V3 (required)[1]
Encounter > **class**	inpatient | outpatient | ambulatory | emergency +.	0..1	Coding	encounter/**code**	code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. ActEncounterCode (required)

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Encounter > **type**	Specific type of encounter (e.g. e-mail consultation, surgical day-care, skilled nursing, rehabilitation).	0..*	CodeableConcept	encounter/**entryRelationship[type]**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/**observation**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/**code**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/**@code="103.17018"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Category".
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName SHALL be included. Encounter Type (preferred)
Encounter > **subject**	The patient ro group present at the encounter.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patientRole.
Encounter > **period**	The start and end time of the encounter.	1..1	Period	encounter/**effectiveTime**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Encounter > **reason**	Reason the encounter takes place, expressed as a code. For admissions, this can be used for a coded admission diagnosis.	0..*	CodeableConcept	encounter/**entryRelationship[reason]**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/**@typeCode="RSON"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/**observation**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**code**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/**@code="103.10141"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Clinical Indication".
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**statusCode/@code="completed"**	
				encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Encounter Reason Codes (preferred)

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to status in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to constraints on statusCode in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map EncounterStatus (HL7 FHIR) to Encounter Act Status HL7 v3 provides a mapping between the two value sets.

10.3 observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)

This template is referenced by section (Allergies).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
AllergyIntolerance	Risk of harmful or undesirable, physiological response which is unique to an individual and associated with exposure to a substance.	Cardinality comes from linking element	AllergyIntolerance	**observation**	Where only a substance is available (e.g. 111088007 |Latex|) and not a statement of allergy or intolerance (e.g. 300916003 |Allergy to latex|), the substance will be sent in code (observation/value), and optionally in substance (participant[agent]/participantRole/playingEntity/code). clinicalStatus (entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation) **SHALL** be instantiated if verificationStatus (entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/value/@code) is not "entered-in-error".
				observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				observation/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100014"**	
				observation/**code**	code is expected to be populated with AllergyIntolerance type. Where type is unavailable, a default code is provided and **SHALL** be instantiated as code@code="102.15517", code@displayName="Adverse Reaction", code@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101".
AllergyIntolerance > **author-related-person**	Reference to related person that recorded the record and takes responsibility for its content.	0..1	Reference(Base RelatedPerson)	observation/**author**	If author is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author. author **SHALL** conform to one of the templates defined in: author (Base RelatedPerson) or author (Base Patient) or author (Base PractitionerRole).

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > **clinical-Status**	The clinical status of the allergy or intolerance.	0..1	code	observation/**entryRelationship[clin_status]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/**observation**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/**code**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/**@code="103.32013"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Clinical Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/@value **SHOULD** be "active". AllergyIntolerance Clinical Status Codes (required)[1]
AllergyIntolerance > **verification-Status**	Assertion about certainty associated with the propensity, or potential risk, of a reaction to the identified substance (including pharmaceutical product).	1..1	code	observation/**entryRelationship[ver_status]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/**observation**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/**code**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/**@code="103.32012"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Verification Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/@value **SHOULD** be "unconfirmed" or "confirmed". AllergyIntolerance Verification Status Codes (required)[2]
AllergyIntolerance > **type**	Identification of the underlying physiological mechanism for the reaction risk.	0..1	code	observation/**code**	AllergyIntoleranceType (required)[3]

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > **code**	Code for an allergy or intolerance statement (either a positive or a negated/excluded statement). This may be a code for a substance or pharmaceutical product that is considered to be responsible for the adverse reaction risk (e.g., 'Latex'), an allergy or intolerance condition (e.g., 'Latex allergy'), or a negated/excluded code for a specific substance or class (e.g., 'No latex allergy') or a general or categorical negated statement (e.g., 'No known allergy', 'No known drug allergies').	1..1	CodeableConcept	observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Indicator of Hypersensitivity or Intolerance to Substance (preferred)
AllergyIntolerance > **patient**	The patient who has the allergy or intolerance.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patientRole.
AllergyIntolerance > **onset[x]**	Estimated or actual date, date-time, or age when allergy or intolerance was identified.	0..1	dateTime | Age | Period | Range	See: instantiation choices	onset[x] as a Range is not currently mapped to CDA. See Known issues. **instantiation choices:** If onset[x] is a dateTime or a Period then it **SHALL** be instantiated as observation/effectiveTime/low/@value. If onset[x] is an Age then it **SHALL** be instantiated as observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/value. value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "PQ". The code for observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/code **SHALL** be code/@code="445518008" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96".
AllergyIntolerance > **recorder**	Individual who recorded the record and takes responsibility for its content.	0..1	Reference(Base Patient | Base Practitioner)	observation/**author**	If author is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author. In CDA an author (Practitioner) is part of an author (PractitionerRole). author **SHALL** conform to one of the templates defined in: author (Base RelatedPerson) or author (Base Patient) or author (Base PractitionerRole).

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > **note**	Additional narrative about the propensity for the Adverse Reaction, not captured in other fields.	0..*	Annotation	observation/**entryRelationship[note]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/**act**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**@classCode="ACT"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**code**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@code="103.16044"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Additional Comments".
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**author**	If this author is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author. In CDA the cardinality of entryRelationship[note]/act/author is 0..*. In this template the cardinality of author **SHALL** be limited to 0..1.
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**effectiveTime**	If this effectiveTime is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author. In CDA the cardinality of entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime is 0..*. In this template the cardinality of effectiveTime **SHALL** be limited to 0..1.
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**text**	text/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "ST".
AllergyIntolerance > **reaction**	Details about each adverse reaction event linked to exposure to the identified substance.	0..*	BackboneElement	observation/**entryRelationship[react]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/**observation**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/**code**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/**@code="102.16474"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Reaction Event".

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > reaction > **substance**	Identification of the specific substance (or pharmaceutical product) considered to be responsible for the Adverse Reaction event. Note: the substance for a specific reaction may be different from the substance identified as the cause of the risk, but it must be consistent with it. For instance, it may be a more specific substance (e.g. a brand medication) or a composite product that includes the identified substance. It must be clinically safe to only process the 'code' and ignore the 'reaction.substance'.	0..1	CodeableConcept	observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/**participant[agent]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/**@typeCode="CAGNT"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/**participantRole**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/participantRole/**playingEntity**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/participantRole/playingEntity/**code**	code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Adverse Reaction Agent (preferred)
AllergyIntolerance > reaction > **manifestation**	Clinical symptoms and/or signs that are observed or associated with the adverse reaction event.	1..*	CodeableConcept	observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/**entryRelationship[mfst]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/**@typeCode="MFST"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/**@inversionInd="true"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/**observation**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/**code**	code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Clinical Finding (preferred)

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to clinicalStatus in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to pre-adoption of FHIR Release 4 terminology.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to verificationStatus in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to pre-adoption of FHIR Release 4 terminology.

[3]This value set differs from the value set bound to type in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to pre-adoption of FHIR Release 4 terminology.

10.4 act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)

This template is referenced by section (Medications).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
List	A set of information summarized from a list of other resources.	Cardinality comes from linking element	List	**act**	A List **SHALL NOT** contain a MedicationDispense (supply) entry item. In this template the occurrences of act/entryRelationship/supply **SHALL** be 0..0.
				act/**@classCode="ACT"**	
				act/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				act/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				act/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063"**	
List > **status**	Indicates the current state of this list.	1..1	code	act/**statusCode**	
				act/statusCode/**@code="active"**	The logical status of "current" is mapped to "active" in CDA.
List > **code**	This code defines the purpose of the list - why it was created.	1..1	CodeableConcept	act/**code**	
				act/code/**@code="10160-0"**	
				act/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"**	LOINC
				act/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "History of Medication use Narrative".
List > **subject**	The common subject (or patient) of the resources that are in the list, if there is one.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier| My Health Record Patient)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patientRole.
List > **date**	The date that the list was prepared.	0..1	dateTime	act/**effectiveTime**	
List > **source**	The entity responsible for deciding what the contents of the list were. Where the list was created by a human, this is the same as the author of the list.	1..1	Reference(Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	act/author/assignedAuthor/**assignedPerson**	In CDA an author (Practitioner) assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) is part of composition-author-role (PractitionerRole) author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier).
List > **entry**	List of medicine type entries	1..*	BackboneElement	act/**entryRelationship[item]**	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
List > entry > **change-description**	Description of a change including the reason for change.	0..1	string	act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/observation/**text**	A change-description will provide the narrative to accompany the flag and may include reasons for stopping or introducing a medicine item, or describe the narrative of the change itself e.g. dose, form, route, frequency.
List > entry > **flag**	The flag allows the system constructing the list to indicate the role and significance of the item in the list.	1..1	CodeableConcept	act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/**entryRelationship[flag]**	In CDA flag is represented as a child of the entry item (entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration).
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/**@typeCode="SUBJ"**	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/**@inversionInd="true"**	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/**observation**	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/observation/**code**	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/**@code="288533004"**	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"**	SNOMED CT
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Change values".
				act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Medicine Item Change from Event (required)
List > entry > **item**	A reference to the actual resource from which data was derived.	1..1	Reference(Summary Statement of Known Medicine)	act/entryRelationship[item]/**substanceAdministration**	substanceAdministration **SHALL** conform to the template defined in substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine).

10.5 substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine)

This template is referenced by act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
MedicationStatement	A record of a medication that is being consumed by a patient. A MedicationStatement may indicate that the patient may be taking the medication now, or has taken the medication in the past or will be taking the medication in the future. The source of this information can be the patient, significant other (such as a family member or spouse), or a clinician. A common scenario where this information is captured is during the history taking process during a patient visit or stay. The medication information may come from sources such as the patient's memory, from a prescription bottle, or from a list of medications the patient, clinician or other party maintains The primary difference between a medication statement and a medication administration is that the medication administration has complete administration information and is based on actual administration information from the person who administered the medication. A medication statement is often, if not always, less specific. There is no required date/time when the medication was administered, in fact we only know that a source has reported the patient is taking this medication, where details such as time, quantity, or rate or even medication product may be incomplete or missing or less precise. As stated earlier, the medication statement information may come from the patient's memory, from a prescription bottle or from a list of medications the patient, clinician or other party maintains. Medication administration is more formal and is not missing detailed information.	Cardinality comes from linking element	MedicationStatement	**substanceAdministration**	
				substanceAdministration/**@classCode="SBADM"**	
				substanceAdministration/**@moodCode**	When sending a Event Summary, this is expected to be "EVN". This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). moodCode **SHALL NOT** be "RQO". HL7 v3 Value Set ActMood (required)
				substanceAdministration/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				substanceAdministration/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015"**	
MedicationStatement > **status**	A code representing the patient or other source's judgment about the state of the medication used that this statement is about. Generally this will be active or completed.	1..1	code	substanceAdministration/**statusCode**	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Medication Act Status HL7 V3 value set (required)[1]

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > **category**	Indicates where type of medication statement and where the medication is expected to be consumed or administered.	0..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/**entryRelationship[category]**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/**observation**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/**code**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/**@code="276339004"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"**	SNOMED CT
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Environment".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Medication usage category codes (preferred)[2]
MedicationStatement > **medication[x]**	Identifies the medication being administered. This is either a link to a resource representing the details of the medication or a simple attribute carrying a code that identifies the medication from a known list of medications.	1..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/**code**	code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Australian Medication (preferred) Australian Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme Schedule Item (example)[3] MIMS Terminology (example) GTIN for Medicines (example) Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: CodeableConcept as a Medicine Item Code.
MedicationStatement > **informationSource**	The person or organization that provided the information about the taking of this medication. Note: Use derivedFrom when a MedicationStatement is derived from other resources, e.g Claim or MedicationRequest.	0..1	Reference(Base RelatedPerson | Base Patient | Base Practitioner)	substanceAdministration/**informant**	If this informant is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in patientRole. informant **SHALL** conform to one of the templates defined in: informant (Base RelatedPerson) or informant (Base Patient) or informant (Base Practitioner).

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > **subject**	The person, animal or group who is/was taking the medication.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patientRole.
MedicationStatement > **taken**	Indicator of the certainty of whether the medication was taken by the patient.	1..1	code	See: instantiation choices	This logical element may have a value of y | n | unk | na as per MedicationStatementTaken (required) **instantiation choices:** When the logical assertion is "y", there is no direct mapping into CDA as this is implicit in the instantiation of the substanceAdministration class. When the logical assertion is "n", taken **SHALL** be instantiated as substanceAdministration/@negationInd="true" unless status is "new" or "suspended" in which case this is implicit in the statusCode; a negationInd **SHALL NOT** be present where substanceAdministration/statusCode/@code is "new" or "suspended". When the logical assertion is "unk" or "na", taken **SHALL** be instantiated as substanceAdministration/@nullFlavor="UNK" or substanceAdministration/@nullFlavor="NA" respectively.
MedicationStatement > **reasonCode**	A reason for why the medication is being/was taken.	0..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/**entryRelationship[reason]**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/**@typeCode="RSON"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/**observation**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**code**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/**@code="103.10141"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Clinical Indication".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Medication Reason Taken (preferred)

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > **note**	Provides extra information about the medication statement that is not conveyed by the other attributes.	0..*	Annotation	substanceAdministration/**entryRelationship[note]**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/**act**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/**@classCode="ACT"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/**code**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@code="103.16044"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101**	NCTIS Data Components
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Additional Comments".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/**author**	If this author is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author. In CDA the cardinality of entryRelationship[note]/act/author is 0..*. In this template the cardinality of author **SHALL** be limited to 0..1.
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/**effectiveTime**	If this effectiveTime is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author/time. In CDA the cardinality of entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime is 0..*. In this template the cardinality of effectiveTime **SHALL** be limited to 0..1.
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/**text**	text/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "ST".
MedicationStatement > **dosage**	Indicates how the medication is/was or should be taken by the patient.	1..1	AU Base Dosage	substanceAdministration/**text**	The model AU Base Dosage is not applied to text. In CDA the maximum occurrences of substanceAdministration/text is 1. The logical cardinality of 0..* may be supported by multiple statements within substanceAdministration/text or the use of additional elements as shown in the recommended mappings for the logical type. dosage **SHALL** at least include text or patient instructions instantiated as substanceAdministration/text. Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: AU Base Dosage.

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to status in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to constraints on statusCode in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map MedicationStatementStatus (HL7 FHIR) to Medication Act Status HL7 v3 provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to category in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to pre-adoption of FHIR Release 4 terminology.

[3]The binding strength for the value sets additional to Australian Medication differs from the binding strength in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*); this is due to normalising the representation of multiple optional terminology slices in a FHIR profile to this CDA mapping table.

10.6 observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)

This template is referenced by section (Medications), section (Medical History), and section (Immunisations).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Observation	Statement of clinical judgement that there are no items of specific interest after a reasonable investigation.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Observation	**observation**	
				observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				observation/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100032"**	
Observation > **status**	The status of the result value.	1..1	code	observation/**entryRelationship[status]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/**observation**	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/**code**	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/**@code="103.32010"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Observation Result Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". ObservationStatus (required)
Observation > **code**	Describes what was observed. Sometimes this is called the observation 'name'.	1..1	CodeableConcept	observation/**code**	
				observation/code/**@code="ASSERTION"**	
				observation/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"**	v3 Code System ActCode
				observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Assertion".

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Observation > **subject**	The patient, or group of patients, location, or device whose characteristics (direct or indirect) are described by the observation and into whose record the observation is placed.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patientRole.
Observation > **effective[x]**	The time or time-period the observed value is asserted as being true. For biological subjects - e.g. human patients - this is usually called the 'physiologically relevant time'. This is usually either the time of the procedure or of specimen collection, but very often the source of the date/time is not known, only the date/time itself.	0..1	dateTime | Period	observation/**effectiveTime**	
Observation > **performer**	Who was responsible for asserting the observed value as 'true'.	0..*	Reference(Base Practitioner | Base Organization | Base RelatedPerson | Base Patient)	See: instantiation choices	If performer is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author. In CDA, performer is mapped to observation/author or observation/participant/@typeCode="AUT". **instantiation choices:** If performer is an Organization then it **SHALL** be instantiated as observation/participant/@typeCode="AUT". participant **SHALL** conform to the template defined in participant (author Base Organization). In CDA an author (Practitioner) is part of an author (PractitionerRole). If performer is a Practitioner or RelatedPerson or Patient then it **SHALL** be instantiated as observation/author. author **SHALL** conform to one of the templates defined in: author (Base PractitionerRole) or author (Base RelatedPerson) or author (Base Patient).
Observation > **value[x]**	The information determined as a result of making the observation, if the information has a simple value.	1..1	CodeableConcept	observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. value/@nullFlavor **SHALL NOT** be instantiated. Assertion Of Absence value set (required)

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to status in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to pre-adoption of FHIR Release 4 terminology.

10.7 substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine)

This template is referenced by section (Immunisations).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Immunization	Describes the event of a patient being administered a vaccination or a record of a vaccination as reported by a patient, a clinician or another party and may include vaccine reaction information and what vaccination protocol was followed.	Cardinality comes from linking element	DomainResource	**substanceAdministration**	
				substanceAdministration/**@classCode="SBADM"**	
				substanceAdministration/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				substanceAdministration/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				substanceAdministration/templateId/**@root= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100057"**	
Immunization > **status**	Indicates the current status of the vaccination event.	1..1	code	substanceAdministration/**statusCode**	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Immunization Act Status HL7 V3 (required)[1]
Immunization > **notGiven**	Indicates if the vaccination was or was not given.	1..1	boolean	n/a	When the logical assertion is 'false', there is no direct mapping into CDA as this is implicit in the instantiation of the substanceAdministration class When the logical assertion is 'true', notGiven **SHALL** be instantiated as substanceAdministration/@negationInd="true".
Immunization > **vaccineCode**	Vaccine that was administered or was to be administered.	1..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/**consumable**	code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Australian Medicines Terminology Vaccine (preferred) Australian Immunisation Register Vaccine (example)[2]
				substanceAdministration/consumable/**manufacturedProduct**	
				substanceAdministration/consumable/ manufacturedProduct/**manufacturedMaterial**	
				substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct/ manufacturedMaterial/**code**	
Immunization > **patient**	The patient who either received or did not receive the immunization.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	**n/a**	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patientRole.
Immunization > **date**	Date vaccine administered or was to be administered.	0..1	dateTime	substanceAdministration/**effectiveTime[imm_date]**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Immunization > **primarySource**	An indication that the content of the record is based on information from the person who administered the vaccine. This reflects the context under which the data was originally recorded.	1..1	boolean	substanceAdministration/**entryRelationship[prim_sour]**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/**typeCode="COMP"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/**observation**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/ observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/ observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/**code**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/ code/**@code="103.17061"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/ code/**@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/ code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Information from a Primary Source".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/**value**	The value is 'true' if the source of the information is a primary source. value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "BL".
Immunization > **vaccinationProtocol**	Contains information about the protocol(s) under which the vaccine was administered.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Immunization > vaccinationProtocol > **doseSequence**	Nominal position in a series.	0..1	positiveInt	substanceAdministration/**entryRelationship[sply]/@typeCode="COMP"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/**sequenceNumber/@value**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/**supply**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/**@classCode="SPLY"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/**independentInd/ @value="false"**	
Immunization > vaccinationProtocol > **doseStatus**	Indicates if the immunization event should 'count' against the protocol.	1..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/text	In the logical model the cardinality of this Indicates if the immunization event should 'count' against the protocol. is 1..1. In this template the cardinality of this logical element **SHALL** be interpreted as 0..1; if available in the source system Indicates if the immunization event should 'count' against the protocol. is expected to form part of substanceAdministration/text.

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to status in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to constraints on statusCode in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map TBD provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]The binding strength for this value set differs from the binding strength in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*); this is due to normalising the representation of multiple optional terminology slices in a FHIR profile to this CDA mapping table.

10.8 observation (Summary Statement of Condition)

This template is referenced by section (Medical History).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Condition	A clinical condition, problem, diagnosis, or other event, situation, issue, or clinical concept that has risen to a level of concern.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Condition	**observation**	clinicalStatus (entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation) **SHALL** be instantiated if verificationStatus (entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation) is present and the value (value/@code) is not "entered-in-error". clinicalStatus **SHALL** be instantiated if abatement is present with the value of clinicalStatus (entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/value/@code) as "inactive", "resolved", or "remission".
				observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				observation/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100054"**	
				observation/**code**	
				observation/code/**@code="282291009"**	
				observation/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"**	SNOMED CT
				observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Diagnosis interpretation".
Condition > **recorder**	Reference to an individual who recorded the condition and takes responsibility for its content.	0..1	Reference(Base RelatedPerson | Base Patient | Base Practitioner)	**n/a**	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in ClinicalDocument/author.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Condition > **clinicalStatus**	The clinical status of the condition.	0..1	code	observation/**entryRelationship[clin_status]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/**observation**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/**code**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/**@code="103.32013"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Clinical Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". Condition Clinical Status Codes (required)
Condition > **verificationStatus**	The verification status to support the clinical status of the condition.	0..1	code	observation/**entryRelationship[ver_status]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/**observation**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/**@classCode="OBS"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/**code**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/**@code="103.32012"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Verification Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". Condition Verification Status (required)
Condition > **code**	Identification of the condition, problem or diagnosis.	1..1	CodeableConcept	observation/**value**	value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "CD". value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be in-cluded. Clinical Condition (preferred)[1]
Condition > **subject**	Indicates the patient or group who the condition record is associated with.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	**n/a**	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patien-tRole.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Condition > **onset[x]**	Estimated or actual date or date-time the condition began, in the opinion of the clinician.	0..1	dateTime | Age | Period | Range	See: instantiation choices	**instantiation choices:** If onset[x] is a dateTime or a Period then it **SHALL** be instantiated as observation/effectiveTime/low/@value. If onset[x] is an Age then it **SHALL** be instantiated as observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/value. value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "PQ". The code for observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/code **SHALL** be code/@code="445518008" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96". If onset[x] is a Range then it **SHALL** be instantiated as TBD.
Condition > **abatement[x]**	The date or estimated date that the condition resolved or went into remission. This is called 'abatement' because of the many overloaded connotations associated with 'remission' or 'resolution' - Conditions are never really resolved, but they can abate.	0..1	dateTime | Age | boolean | Period | Range	See: instantiation choices	**instantiation choices:** If abatement[x] is a dateTime or a Period then it **SHALL** be instantiated as observation/effectiveTime/high/@value. If abatement[x] is an Age then it **SHALL** be instantiated as observation/entryRelationship[abat]/observation/value. value/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "PQ". The code for observation/entryRelationship[abat]/observation/code **SHALL** be code/@code="1292971000168105" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96". If abatement[x] is a Range then it **SHALL** be instantiated as TBD.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Condition > **note**	Additional information about the Condition. This is a general notes/comments entry for description of the Condition, its diagnosis and prognosis.	0..*	Annotation	observation/**entryRelationship[note]**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/**act**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**@classCode="ACT"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**code**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@code="103.16044"**	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Additional Comments"
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**author**	If this author is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author. In CDA the cardinality of entryRelationship[note]/act/author is 0..*. In this template the cardinality of author **SHALL** be limited to 0..1.
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**effectiveTime**	If this effectiveTime is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author/time. In CDA the cardinality of entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime is 0..*. In this template the cardinality of effectiveTime **SHALL** be limited to 0..1.
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/**text**	text/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "ST".

[1]Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on code in Summary Statement of Condition [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the coding part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

10.9 procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure)

This template is referenced by section (Medical History).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Context: Comes from linking elements	
Procedure	An action that is or was performed on a patient. This can be a physical intervention like an operation, or less invasive like counseling or hypnotherapy.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Procedure	**procedure**	
				procedure/**@classCode="PROC"**	
				procedure/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				procedure/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				procedure/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100055"**	
Procedure > **status**	A code specifying the state of the procedure. Generally this will be in-progress or completed state.	1..1	code	procedure/**statusCode**	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Procedure Act Status HL7 V3 (required)[1]
Procedure > **code**	The specific procedure that is performed. Use text if the exact nature of the procedure cannot be coded (e.g. 'Laparoscopic Appendectomy').	1..1	CodeableConcept	procedure/**code**	code/originalText or code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Procedure (preferred)[2]
Procedure > **subject**	The person, animal or group on which the procedure was performed.	1..1	Reference(Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	**n/a**	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in patientRole.
Procedure > **performed[x]**	The date(time)/period over which the procedure was performed. Allows a period to support complex procedures that span more than one date, and also allows for the length of the procedure to be captured.	0..1	dateTime | Period	procedure/**effectiveTime**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logic-al card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Procedure > **note**	Any other notes about the procedure. E.g. the operative notes.	0..*	Annotation	procedure/**entryRelationship[note]**	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/**@typeCode="COMP"**	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/**act**	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/**@classCode="ACT"**	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/**code**	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@code="103.16044"**	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@codeSystem= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"**	NCTIS Data Components
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/**@displayName**	displayName **SHOULD** be "Additional Comments".
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/**author**	If this author is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author. In CDA the cardinality of entryRelationship[note]/act/author is 0..*. In this template the cardinality of author **SHALL** be limited to 0..1.
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/**effectiveTime**	If this effectiveTime is not instantiated, the data is considered to be included via induction in ClinicalDocument/author/time. In CDA the cardinality of entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime is 0..*. In this template the cardinality of effectiveTime **SHALL** be limited to 0..1.
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/**text**	text/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "ST".

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to status in the Agency logical model (see *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*) due to constraints on statusCode in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map TBD provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on code in Summary Statement of Known Procedure [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the coding part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

10.10 ext:coverage2 (Practitioner qualification)

This template is referenced by participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner), informant (Base Practitioner), and assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier), assignedPerson (Base Practitioner).

See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Practitioner > **qualification**	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	Cardinality comes from linking element	BackboneElement	**ext:coverage2[prac_qual]**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/**@typeCode="COVBY"**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/**templateId**	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/templateId/**@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038"**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/**ext:entitlement**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/**@classCode="COV"**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/**@moodCode="EVN"**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/**ext:participant[prac]**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/**@typeCode="HLD"**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/**ext:participantRole**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/ext:participantRole/**@classCode="ASSIGNED"**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/ext:participantRole/**ext:id**	This ext:id **SHALL** hold the same value as practitioner that this qualification is associated with (the value in this id element **SHALL** be present in separate participation).
Practitioner > qualification > **identifier**	An identifier that applies to this person's qualification in this role.	0..*	Identifier	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/**ext:id**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2) are available: Identifier.
Practitioner > qualification > **code**	Coded representation of the qualification.	1..1	CodeableConcept	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/**ext:code**	ext:code/originalText or ext:code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. v2 table 0360, Version 2.7 (example)
Practitioner > qualification > **period**	Period during which the qualification is valid.	0..1	Period	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/**ext:effectiveTime**	

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Practitioner > qualification > **issuer**	Organization that regulates and issues the qualification.	0..1	Reference(Organization	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/**ext:participant[issuer]**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[issuer]/**@typeCode="AUT"**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[issuer]/**ext:participantRole**	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[issuer]/ ext:participantRole/**@classCode="COMPAR"**	

11 Common patterns

This chapter contains conformance requirements on CDA schema elements. These conformance rules apply across multiple templates, forming 'common patterns'.

11.1 Entity Identifier

See Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Common pattern	CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
Entity Identifier	**ext:asEntityIdentifier**	A number or code issued for the purpose of identifying a participant within a healthcare context.	Cardinality comes from linking element	
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/**@classCode="IDENT"**		1..1	
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/**ext:id**		1..1	
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/**@root**		1..1	root **SHALL** be an OID and **SHALL NOT** be a UUID.
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/**@extension**		0..1	
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/**@assigningAuthorityName**		0..1	A name for the namespace represented in the root that is populated with the issuer, or identifier type, or a concatenation of both as appropriate. This is used for human-readable, not machine processing, purposes. assigningAuthorityName **SHOULD** be instantiated.
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/**ext:code**		0..1	
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/**ext:assigningGeographicArea**		0..1	
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:assigningGeographicArea/**@classCode="PLC"**		1..1	
	ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:assigningGeographicArea/**ext:name**		0..1	The range and extent that the identifier applies to the object with which it is associated that is populated directly from the geographic area. This is used for human-readable, not machine processing, purposes. ext:name **SHOULD** be instantiated. Healthcare Identifier Geographic Area (preferred) This CDA schema element is expected to be populated with the display, e.g. "National Identifier".

Examples

Example 11.1. Entity Identifier - Australian IHI

```
<!-- Australian IHI -->
<xs:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
 <xs:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003608833357361" assigningAuthorityName="IHI" />
 <xs:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
      <xs:name>National Identifier</xs:name>
   </xs:assigningGeographicArea>
</xs:asEntityIdentifier>
```

Example 11.2. Entity Identifier - Local Medical Record Number

```
<!-- Local Medical Record Number -->
<xs:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
 <xs:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.29.8003621566684455" extension="542181" assigningAuthorityName="Croydon GP Centre" />
   <xs:code code="MR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" />
</xs:asEntityIdentifier>
```

Example 11.3. Entity Identifier - Australian HPI-I

```
<!-- Australian HPI-I -->
<xs:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
 <xs:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003610537409456"/>
 <xs:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
  <xs:name>National Identifier</xs:name>
 </xs:assigningGeographicArea>
</xs:asEntityIdentifier>
```

Example 11.4. Entity Identifier - Australian HPI-O

```
<!-- Australian HPI-O -->
<xs:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
   <xs:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-O" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003621566684455" />
   <xs:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
      <xs:name>National Identifier</xs:name>
   </xs:assigningGeographicArea>
</xs:asEntityIdentifier>
```

11.2 Personal Relationship

See Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Common pattern	CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
Personal Relationship	**ext:personalRelationship**	The personal relationship of a participant to a patient. A personal relationship is not to be instantiated if the participant is a practitioner.	Cardinality comes from linking element	
	ext:personalRelationship/**@classCode="PRS"**		0..1	
	ext:personalRelationship/**ext:id**		0..1	
	ext:personalRelationship/**ext:code**		1..1	
	ext:personalRelationship/**ext:statusCode**		0..1	v3 Code System RoleStatus (required)
	ext:personalRelationship/**ext:effectiveTime**		0..1	
	ext:personalRelationship/**ext:asPersonalRelationship**		1..1	
	ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/**@classCode="PSN"**		0..1	
	ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/**@determinerCode="INSTANCE"**		0..1	
	ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/**id**		1..1	This id **SHALL** hold the same value as patientRole/id.
	ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/**administrativeGenderCode/@nullFlavor="NA"**		1..1	Included for CDA conformance only.

Examples

Example 11.5. Personal Relationship - author related person

```
<!-- recordTarget (Patient) -->
<recordTarget>
   <patientRole>
      <!-- patient identifier-->
      <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>
   </patientRole>
</recordTarget>

<!-- author (RelatedPerson) -->
<author>
   <time value="200911031647+1000"/>
   <assignedAuthor>
      <!-- author identifier-->
      <id root="86d729b8-72d2-460a-a64c-489a51607450"/>
      <assignedPerson>
         <!-- personal relationship -->
         <ext:personalRelationship>
            <!--relationship-->
            <ext:code code="SIGOTHR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" codeSystemName="v3 Code System RoleCode" displayName="significant other" />
            <!--patient-->
            <ext:asPersonalRelationship>
               <!-- patient identifier-->
               <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>
               <administrativeGenderCode nullFlavor="NA" />
            </ext:asPersonalRelationship>
         </ext:personalRelationship>
      </assignedPerson>
   </assignedAuthor>
</author>
```

Example 11.6. Personal Relationship - performer related person

```
<!-- recordTarget (Patient) -->
<recordTarget>
   <patientRole>
      <!-- patient identifier-->
      <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>
   </patientRole>
</recordTarget>

<!-- participant performer (RelatedPerson) -->
<participant typeCode="PRF">
   <associatedEntity classCode="ASSIGNED">
      <!--participant performer identifier-->
      <id root="f3351b5c-8a6c-437c-a55c-a6c121873456"/>
      <!-- personal relationship -->
      <associatedPerson>
         <ext:personalRelationship>
            <!--relationship-->
            <ext:code code="FAMMEMB" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" codeSystemName="v3 Code System RoleCode" displayName="Family Member" />
```

```
            <!--patient-->
            <ext:asPersonalRelationship>
               <!-- patient identifier-->
               <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>
               <administrativeGenderCode nullFlavor="NA" />
            </ext:asPersonalRelationship>
         </ext:personalRelationship>
      </associatedPerson>
   </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

11.3 Qualification

See Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Common pattern	CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
Qualification	**ext:asQualifications**	A list of professional certifications, and certificates recognising having passed a course.	Cardinality comes from linking element	
	ext:asQualifications/**@classCode="QUAL"**		1..1	
	ext:asQualifications/**ext:code**		1..1	Qualifications is a text field, so the text list is captured in ext:code/originalText.

Examples

Example 11.7. Qualification - Bachelor of Pharmacy

```
<!-- Qualification - Bachelor of Pharmacy -->
<ext:asQualifications classCode="QUAL">
 <ext:code>
  <originalText>Bachelor of Pharmacy</originalText>
 </ext:code>
</ext:asQualifications>
```

Example 11.8. Qualification - List of qualifications

```
<!-- Qualification -->
<ext:asQualifications classCode="QUAL">
 <ext:code>
  <originalText>Doctor of Medicine, Fellowship of the Australian College of Rural and Remote Medicine (FACRRM)</originalText>
 </ext:code>
</ext:asQualifications>
```

11.4 Language Communication

See Legend - CDA mapping table for CDA schema elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Common pattern	CDA schema element	CDA element description	CDA card	CDA constraints and comments
Language Communication	**ext:languageCommunication**	A language communication capability of an individual.	Cardinality comes from linking element	
	ext:languageCommunication/**languageCode**		1..1	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). All Languages (required) Common Languages in Australia (extensible)
	ext:languageCommunication/**modeCode**		0..1	v3 Code System LanguageAbilityMode (preferred)
	ext:languageCommunication/**proficiencyLevelCode**		0..1	v3 Code System LanguageAbilityProficiency (preferred)
	ext:languageCommunication/**preferenceInd**		0..1	This CDA schema element is of type Boolean (BL).

Examples

Example 11.9. Language Communication - English is preferred

```
<!-- Language Communication -->
<ext:languageCommunication>
 <languageCode code="en"/>
 <preferenceInd value="true"/>
</ext:languageCommunication>
```

Example 11.10. Language Communication - Pitjantjatjara is preferred

```
<!-- Language Communication -->
<ext:languageCommunication>
 <languageCode code="pjt"/>
</ext:languageCommunication>
```

Example 11.11. Language Communication - German is spoken

```
<!-- Language Communication -->
<ext:languageCommunication>
 <languageCode code="de"/>
</ext:languageCommunication>
```

Appendix A. Complex data type mappings to CDA (R2)

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how *FHIR Release 3 (STU) [HL7FHIR3]* complex data types referred to in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The material provided are recommendations and do not represent conformance requirements.

A.1 Identifier

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type Identifier can map to CDA (R2). In addition to material provided in this implementation guide some guidance on representation of common identifiers in CDA is provided by *Representation of Common Australian Identifiers in v2 and CDA [HI2011]* and *Common - Clinical Document [DH2019a]*.

The mapping table below provides a set of preferred mappings to the InstanceIdentifier (II) data type [HL7V3] and the Entity Identifier (EntityIdentifier) type defined in the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema, and do not represent conformance requirements. See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Identifier	A technical identifier - identifies some entity uniquely and unambiguously.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Element	See: instantiation choices	In CDA it is possible that an identifier is formed such that the system and value are both part of the value of the root attribute. In this circumstance the extension attribute **SHOULD NOT** be instantiated. **instantiation choices:** If the identifier is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson, or Device, then the identifier is expected to be instantiated as ext:asEntityIdentifier/@classCode="IDENT". See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. The identifier element may be instantiated as id.
Identifier > **use**	The purpose of this identifier.	0..1	code	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Identifier > **type**	A coded type for the identifier that can be used to determine which identifier to use for a specific purpose.	0..1	CodeableConcept	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/**ext:code**	ext:code is only available if the identifier is instantiated as ext:asEntityIdentifier/@classCode="IDENT". ext:code/originalText or ext:code/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Identifier Type Codes (extensible)
Identifier > **system**	Establishes the namespace for the value - that is, a URL that describes a set values that are unique.	0..1	uri	See: instantiation choices	**instantiation choices:** If the identifier is for a If the identifier is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson, or Device, then the identifier system is expected to be instantiated as ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@root. The identifier system may be instantiated as id/@root.
Identifier > **value**	The portion of the identifier typically relevant to the user and which is unique within the context of the system.	0..1	string	See: instantiation choices	**instantiation choices:** If the identifier is for a If the identifier is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson, or Device, then identifier value is expected to be instantiated as ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@extension. The identifier value may be instantiated as id/@extension.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Identifier > **period**	Time period during which identifier is/was valid for use.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Identifier > **assigner**	Organization that issued/manages the identifier.	0..1	Reference (Organization)	See: instantiation choices	**instantiation choices:** If the identifier is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson, or Device, then identifier assigner is expected to be instantiated as ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@assigningAuthorityName. The identifier assigner may be instantiated as id/@assigningAuthorityName.

Examples

Example A.1. Identifier - Patient identifiers

```
<!-- subject -->
<recordTarget>
    <!-- subject (Patient) -->
    <patientRole>
        <patient>
            …
            <!-- Patient.identifier as an Australian IHI -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <!-- identifier.type.text=IHI,
                identifier.value=8003600200002222,
                identifier.system=http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/id/hi/ihi/1.0 -->
                <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="IHI" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003600200002222" />
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>

            <!-- Patient.identifier as an Institution Medical Record-->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
             <!-- identifier.assigner=Croyden GP Centre,
                identifier.value=542181,
                identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.29.8003621566684455 -->
             <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.29.8003621566684455" extension="542181" assigningAuthorityName="Croydon GP Centre" />
             <!-- Patient.identifier.type -->
             <ext:code code="MR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" />
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>

            <!-- Patient.identifier as a Medicare Number -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
             <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.5001.1.0.7,
                identifier.value=123456789,
                identifier.assigner=Medciare Card Number -->
             <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Card Number"
              root="1.2.36.1.5001.1.0.7" extension="1234567892"/>
             <ext:code code="MC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"
              codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" displayName="Patient's Medicare number"/>
```

```
            <!-- Identifier.period is not available in an asEntityIdentifier class -->
           </ext:asEntityIdentifier>

           <!-- Patient.identifier as a DVA Number -->
           <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270091,
               identifier.value=NBUR9080,
               identifier.assigner=Department of Veterans' Affairs -->
            <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Department of Veterans' Affairs"
             root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270091" extension="NBUR9080"/>
            <ext:code code="DVG" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.1.203"
             codeSystemName="HL7V2Table0203IdentifierTypeAUExtended" displayName="DVA Gold Card Number"/>
            <!-- Identifier.period is not available in an asEntityIdentifier class -->
           </ext:asEntityIdentifier>

           <!-- Patient.identifier as a Healthcare card number -->
           <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270098,
               identifier.value=307111942H,
               identifier.assigner=Centrelink customer reference number -->
            <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Centrelink customer reference number"
             root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270098" extension="307111942H"/>
            <ext:code code="HC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"
             codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" displayName="Health Card Number"/>
           </ext:asEntityIdentifier>

       </patient>
    </patientRole>
</recordTarget>
```

Example A.2. PractitionerRole identifiers

```
<author>
    <time value="200911031647+1000"/>
    <!-- author (PractitionerRole) -->
    <assignedAuthor>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.id -->
        <id root="86d729b8-72d2-460a-a64c-489a51607450"/>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.practitioner(Practitioner) -->
        <assignedPerson>
            <!-- Practitioner.identifier as an Australian HPI-I -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <!-- identifier.value=8003610537409456,
                identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0,
                identifier.assigner=HPI-I -->
                <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"
                    root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003610537409456"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>

            <!-- PractitionerRole.identifier as an ABN scoped provider identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
             <!-- identifier.value=8003610537409456,
                identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0,
                identifier.assigner=HPI-I -->
                <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Albion Hospital",
```

```
                root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.70.51824753556"
                extension="peterwinslow44"/>
                <!-- identifier.type -->
                <ext:code code="EI"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.18.108"
                    codeSystemName="v2 Identifier Type"
                    displayName="Employee number"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </assignedPerson>
    </assignedAuthor>
    <!--PractitionerRole.organization (Organization)-->
    <representedOrganization>
        <!-- Organization.name -->
        <name>Albion Hospital</name>
        <!--Organization.identifier as an ABN-->
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <!-- identifier.value=51824754455,
            identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36,
            identifier.assigner=ABN -->
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455" assigningAuthorityName="ABN"/>
             <!-- identifier.type -->
            <ext:code code="XX"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" />
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    </representedOrganization>
</author>
```

Example A.3. Identifier - Organization identifier

```
<custodian>
    <!-- custodian (Organization)-->
    <assignedCustodian>
        <representedCustodianOrganization>
            <!-- Organization.id-->
            <id root="d0455def-ff37-4ebe-97fb-52db7224b148"/>
            <!-- Organization.identifier as a Laboratory NATA Identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <!-- identifier.system.value=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.12,
                identifier.value=2184,
                identifier.assigner=NATA -->
                <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="NATA"
                    root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.12" extension="2184"/>
                <!-- identifier.type -->
                <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </representedCustodianOrganization>
    </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>
```

Example A.4. Identifier - ProcedureRequest identifier

```
<!--DiagnosticReport.basedOn-->
<inFulfillmentOf typeCode="FLFS">
```

```
    <!--ProcedureRequest-->
    <order classCode="ACT" moodCode="RQO">
        <!-- ProcedureRequest.identifier
        identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.52.8003621566684455, identifier.value=123451 -->
        <id extension="123451" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.52.8003621566684455" />
    </order>
</inFulfillmentOf>
```

A.2 Base HumanName

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the constrained form of complex data type HumanName as Base HumanName published by the Australian Digital Health Agency can map to CDA (R2).

The mapping table below provides a set of preferred mappings to the PersonName (PN) data type [HL7V3] for representing an Australian address and do not represent conformance requirements. See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
HumanName	A human's name with the ability to identify parts and usage.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Element	**//name**	name **SHALL** have at least text (name with full text representation) or family (name/family) or given (name/given) instantiated. In CDA, a full text representation of a name is not to be included in the same instance as a structured representation with the same name parts. Either the free text representation or a name with structure (e.g. name/family or name/given) should be provided but not both.
HumanName > **use**	Identifies the purpose for this name.	0..1	code	//name/**@use**	Common Person Name Use (required)[1]
HumanName > **text**	A full text representation of the name.	0..1	string	**//name**	
HumanName > **family**	The part of a name that links to the genealogy. In some cultures (e.g. Eritrea) the family name of a son is the first name of his father.	0..1	string	//name/**family**	
HumanName > **given**	Given name.	0..*	string	//name/**given**	
HumanName > **prefix**	Part of the name that is acquired as a title due to academic, legal, employment or nobility status, etc. and that appears at the start of the name.	0..*	string	//name/**prefix**	A prefix value can be populated as described in *AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare [SA2014a]*, 4.4.2 Name Title.
HumanName > **suffix**	Part of the name that is acquired as a title due to academic, legal, employment or nobility status, etc. and that appears at the end of the name.	0..*	string	//name/**suffix**	A suffix value can be populated as described in *AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare [SA2014a]*, 4.5.3.2 Name Suffix.
HumanName > **period**	Indicates the period of time when this name was valid for the named person.	0..1	Period	//name/**validTime**	

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in HumanName due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map NameUse (HL7 FHIR) to Common Person Name Use provides a mapping between the two value sets.

Examples

Example A.5. Base HumanName - name use, given names, family name

```
<!-- HumanName where use=official -->
<name use="C">
    <!-- HumanName.given -->
    <given>Adam</given>
    <!-- HumanName.given -->
    <given>A.</given>
    <!-- HumanName.family -->
    <family>Everyman</family>
</name>
```

Example A.6. Base HumanName - unstructured name

```
<!-- HumanName where use=official -->
<name use="C">
    <!-- HumanName.text -->
    Adam A. Everyman
</name>
```

Example A.7. Base HumanName - given name only

```
<!-- HumanName where use=usual -->
<name>
    <!-- HumanName.given -->
    <given>Damo</given>
</name>
```

Example A.8. Base HumanName - structured name with period

```
<!-- HumanName where use=old -->
<name use="DN">
    <!-- HumanName.given -->
    <given>Adam</given>
    <!-- HumanName.given -->
    <given>A.</given>
    <!-- HumanName.family -->
    <family>Adamson</family>
    <!-- HumanName.period -->
    <validTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="01012001" />
        <high value="01012012" />
```

```
    </validTime>
</name>
```

A.3 Address

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type Address can map to CDA (R2).

The mapping table below provides a set of preferred mappings to the PostalAddress (AD) data type [HL7V3] and do not represent conformance requirements. See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Address	An address expressed using postal conventions (as opposed to GPS or other location definition formats). This data type may be used to convey addresses for use in delivering mail as well as for visiting locations which might not be valid for mail delivery. There are a variety of postal address formats defined around the world.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Element	**//addr**	
Address > **use**	The purpose of this address.	0..1	code	//addr/**@use**	addr/@use can carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes. Address Use HL7 v3 (required)[1]
Address > **type**	Distinguishes between physical addresses (those you can visit) and mailing addresses (e.g. PO Boxes and care-of addresses). Most addresses are both.	0..1	code	//addr/**@use**	addr/@use can carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes. Address Type HL7 v3 (required)[2]
Address > **text**	A full text representation of the address.	0..1	string	**//addr**	The expectation is that this is free text.
Address > **line**	This component contains the house number, apartment number, street name, street direction, P.O. Box number, delivery hints, and similar address information.	0..*	string	//addr/**streetAddressLine**	
Address > **city**	The name of the city, town, village or other community or delivery center.	0..1	string	//addr/**city**	
Address > **district**	The name of the administrative area (county).	0..1	string	//addr/**county**	
Address > **state**	Sub-unit of a country with limited sovereignty in a federally organized country. A code may be used if codes are in common use (i.e. US 2 letter state codes).	0..1	string	//addr/**state**	
Address > **postalCode**	A postal code designating a region defined by the postal service.	0..1	string	//addr/**postalCode**	
Address > **country**	Country - a nation as commonly understood or generally accepted.	0..1	string	//addr/**country**	Iso 3166 Part 1: 2 Letter Codes (preferred)
Address > **period**	Time period when address was/is in use.	0..1	Period	//addr/**useablePeriod**	

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to type in Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressType provides a mapping between the two value sets.

Examples

Example A.9. Address - structured work and postal address

```
<!-- Address where use=work and type=postal -->
<addr use="PST WP">
    <!--Address.text-->
    1050 W Wishard Blvd
    RG
    5th floor
    Indianapolis, IN 46240
    <!--Address.line-->
    <streetAddressLine>1050 W Wishard Blvd</streetAddressLine>
    <!--Address.line-->
    <streetAddressLine>RG 5th floor</streetAddressLine>
    <!--Address.city-->
    <city>Indianapolis</city>
    <!--Address.state-->
    <state>IN</state>
    <!--Address.postalCode-->
    <postalCode>46240</postalCode>
</addr>
```

Example A.10. Address - structured home and physical address

```
<!-- Address where use=home and type=physical -->
<addr use="PHYS H">
    <!--Address.text-->
    1 Back Lane&#13;&#10;Holmfirth&#13;&#10;HUDDERSFIELD&#13;&#10;HD7 1HQ
    <!--Address.line-->
    <streetAddressLine>1 Back Lane</streetAddressLine>
    <!--Address.city-->
    <city>Holmfirth</city>
    <!--Address.district-->
    <county>HUDDERSFIELD</county>
    <!--Address.postalCode-->
    <postalCode>HD7 1HQ</postalCode>
</addr>
```

Example A.11. Address - temporary international address

```
<!-- Address where use=old -->
<addr use="TMP">
    <!--Address.line-->
    <streetAddressLine>Rue Lougoraïa 12, app. 10</streetAddressLine>
```

```
    <!--Address.city-->
    <city>Korolevo</city>
    <!--Address.state-->
    <state>Minsk</state>
    <!--Address.country-->
    <country>BELARUS</country>
    <!--Address.period-->
    <useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="01012001" />
        <high value="01012012" />
    </useablePeriod>
</addr>
```

A.4 AU Base Address

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the constrained form of complex data type Address as AU Base Address published by HL7 Australia can map to CDA (R2).

The mapping table below provides a set of preferred mappings to the PostalAddress (AD) data type [HL7V3] for representing an Australian address and do not represent conformance requirements. See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Address	An Australian address expressed using postal conventions (as opposed to GPS or other location definition formats).	Cardinality comes from linking element	Element	**//addr**	addr **SHALL** have text or one or more line (addr/streetAddressLine).
Address > **no-fixed-address**	No fixed address indicator.	0..1	boolean	n/a	Not mapped directly; if 0..1 is "true", addr **SHOULD** be "NO FIXED ADDRESS" and addr/@use **SHOULD** be "PHYS".
Address > **use**	The purpose of this address.	0..1	code	//addr/**@use**	addr/@use can carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes. Address Use HL7 v3 (required)[1]
Address > **type**	Distinguishes between physical addresses (those you can visit) and mailing addresses (e.g. PO Boxes and care-of addresses). Most addresses are both.	0..1	code	//addr/**@use**	addr/@use can carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes. Address Type HL7 v3 (required)[2]
Address > **text**	A full text representation of the address.	0..1	string	**//addr**	The expectation is that this is free text.
Address > **line**	This component contains the house number, apartment number, street name, street direction, P.O. Box number, delivery hints, and similar address information.	0..*	string	//addr/**streetAddressLine**	
Address > **city**	The name of the city, town, village or other community or delivery center.	0..1	string	//addr/**city**	
Address > **district**	The name of the administrative area (county).	0..1	string	//addr/**county**	
Address > **state**	Sub-unit of a country with limited sovereignty in a federally organized country. A code may be used if codes are in common use (i.e. US 2 letter state codes).	0..1	string	//addr/**state**	state **SHALL** be populated with the code e.g. "NT". Australian States and Territories (required)
Address > **postalCode**	A postal code designating a region defined by the postal service.	0..1	string	//addr/**postalCode**	The maximum length of postalCode **SHALL** be 4.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Address > **country**	Fixed value if present otherwise assumed to be Australia in this context.	0..1	string	//addr/**country**	country **SHALL** be "AU".
Address > **period**	Time period when address was/is in use.	0..1	Period	//addr/**useablePeriod**	

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in AU Base Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

[2]This value set differs from the value set bound to type in AU Base Address due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA schema. The concept map v3 map for AddressType provides a mapping between the two value sets.

Examples

Example A.12. AU Base Address - no fixed address in Melbourne, VIC

```
<!-- Australian Address with no fixed address in Melbourne, VIC-->
<addr use="PHYS">
 <!--Address.text-->
 NO FIXED ADDRESS
 <!--Address.city-->
 <city>Melbourne</city>
 <!--Address.state-->
 <state>VIC</state>
</addr>
```

Example A.13. AU Base Address - unstructured address

```
<!-- Australian Address with only text-->
<addr use="PHYS">
 <!--Address.text-->
 Level 1, 300 George St, Brisbane, QLD 4000
</addr>
```

Example A.14. AU Base Address - structured postal address with period

```
<!-- Australian Address where use=work and type=postal -->
<addr use="PST WP">
 <!--Address.line-->
 <streetAddressLine>Northern Territory Office, Department of Addresses, GPO Box 19132110</streetAddressLine>
 <!--Address.city-->
 <city>Darwin</city>
 <!--Address.state-->
 <state>NT</state>
 <!--Address.postalCode-->
 <postalCode>0801</postalCode>
 <!--Address.country-->
```

```
 <country>AU</country>
 <!--Address.period-->
 <useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">
  <low value="200311031647+1000" />
 </useablePeriod>
</addr>
```

Example A.15. AU Base Address - structured physical address

```
<!-- Australian Address where use=work and type=physical -->
<addr use="PHYS WP">
 <!--Address.line-->
 <streetAddressLine>5th Floor, Northern Territory House, 223 Mitchell Street</streetAddressLine>
 <!--Address.city-->
 <city>Darwin</city>
 <!--Address.state-->
 <state>NT</state>
 <!--Address.postalCode-->
 <postalCode>0800</postalCode>
 <!--Address.country-->
 <country>AU</country>
</addr>
```

A.5 ContactPoint

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type ContactPoint can map to CDA (R2).

The mapping table below provides a set of preferred mappings to the TelecommunicationAddress (TEL) data type [HL7V3] and do not represent conformance requirements. See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
ContactPoint	Details for all kinds of technology mediated contact points for a person or organization, including telephone, email, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Element	**//telecom**	In CDA, ContactPoint value and system are represented as parts of telecom/@value. If ContactPoint value is present, ContactPoint system **SHALL** be present.
ContactPoint > **system**	Telecommunications form for contact point - what communications system is required to make use of the contact.	0..1	code	//telecom/**@value**	Makes up part of the attribute: "system:value", e.g. "tel:phone number", "mailto:email address", "http:URL", etc. HL7 URLScheme (required)
ContactPoint > **value**	The actual contact point details, in a form that is meaningful to the designated communication system (i.e. phone number or email address).	0..1	string	//telecom/**@value**	Makes up the part of the attribute: "system:value", e.g. "tel:phone number", "mailto:email address", "http:URL", etc.
ContactPoint > **use**	Identifies the purpose for the contact point.	0..1	code	//telecom/**@use**	HL7 TelecommunicationAddressUse (required)[1]
ContactPoint > **rank**	Specifies a preferred order in which to use a set of contacts. Contacts are ranked with lower values coming before higher values.	0..1	positiveInt	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
ContactPoint > **period**	Time period when the contact point was/is in use.	0..1	Period	//telecom/**usablePeriod**	

[1]This value set differs from the value set bound to use in ContactPoint due to constraints on @use in the HL7 CDA Schema. The concept map v3 map for ContactPointUse provides a mapping between the two value sets.

Examples

Example A.16. ContactPoint - home telephone with period

```
<!-- ContactPoint where system=phone, value=+1-(03)5550-1212, use=home -->
<telecom value="tel:+1-(03)5550-1212" use="H">
    <!-- ContactPoint.period -->
```

```
    <useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="01012001" />
        <high value="01012012" />
    </useablePeriod>
</telecom>
```

Example A.17. ContactPoint - home telephone

```
<!-- ContactPoint where system=phone, value=0755501234, use=home -->
<telecom use="H" value="tel:0755501234" />
```

Example A.18. ContactPoint - work email

```
<!-- ContactPoint where system=email, value=sfranklin@amail.example.com, use=work -->
<telecom use="WP" value="mailto:sfranklin@amail.com.au" />
```

A.6 AU Base Dosage

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the constrained form of complex data type Dosage as AU Base Dosage published by HL7 Australia can map to CDA (R2).

The mapping table below provides a set of preferred mappings to CDA Schema elements and do not represent conformance requirements. See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Dosage	Indicates how the medication is/was taken or should be taken by the patient.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Element	See: instantiation choices	**instantiation choices:** When a single instance of dosage is recorded the logical element has no direct mapping; it is implicit in the mapping of the child elements. When more than one instance of dosage is recorded, each instance of dosage is recorded as a child substanceAdministration, e.g. substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[dosage]/substanceAdministration[@typeCode="SBADM", @moodCode="INT"].

Dosage > **sequence**	Indicates the order in which the dosage instructions should be applied or interpreted.	0..1	integer	//**entryRelationship[dosage]**
				//entryRelationship[dosage]/**@typeCode="COMP"**
				//entryRelationship[dosage]/**sequenceNumber**
					sequenceNumber **SHALL NOT** be instantiated for a single instance of dosage.
					
					The value of sequenceNumber **SHALL** be an ordinal number starting at "1" and increasing by "1" for each subsequent instance of dosage.

Dosage > **text**	Free text dosage instructions e.g. SIG.	0..1	string	**//text**	
Dosage > **additionalInstruction**	Supplemental instruction - e.g. 'with meals'.	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; included implicitly in text, or patientInstruction, or timing, asNeeded.
Dosage > **patientInstruction**	Instructions in terms that are understood by the patient or consumer.	0..1	string	**//text**	
Dosage > **timing**	When medication should be administered.	0..1	Timing	**//effectiveTime**	Recommended mappings for this logical type to CDA (R2)are available: Timing.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Dosage > **asNeeded[x]**	Indicates whether the Medication is only taken when needed within a specific dosing schedule (Boolean option), or it indicates the precondition for taking the Medication (CodeableConcept).	0..1	boolean | CodeableConcept	**//precondition**	
				//precondition/**@typeCode="PRCN"**	
				//precondition/**criterion**	
				//precondition/criterion/**code**	
				//precondition/criterion/code/**@code="ASSERTION"**	
				//precondition/criterion/code/**@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"**	v3 Code System ActCode
				//precondition/criterion/**value**	value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD" or "BL". If value/@xsi:type is "CD" then value/originalText or value/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Clinical Finding (preferred)
Dosage > **site**	Body site to administer to.	0..1	CodeableConcept	**//approachSiteCode**	approachSiteCode/originalText or approachSiteCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Body Site (preferred)
Dosage > **route**	How drug should enter body.	0..1	CodeableConcept	**//routeCode**	routeCode/originalText or routeCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. Route of Administration (preferred)
Dosage > **method**	Technique for administering medication.	0..1	CodeableConcept	**//ext:methodCode**	ext:methodCode/originalText or ext:methodCode/@displayName **SHALL** be included. SNOMED CT Administration Method Codes (preferred)
Dosage > **dose[x]**	Amount of medication per dose.	0..1	Range | SimpleQuantity	**//doseQuantity**	
Dosage > **maxDosePerPeriod**	Upper limit on medication per unit of time.	0..1	Ratio	**//maxDoseQuantity**	
Dosage > **maxDosePerAdministration**	Upper limit on medication per administration.	0..1	SimpleQuantity	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA however this may be represented by an administration schedule with a maxDosePerAdministration in that administration schedule represented as maxDoseQuantity with a period of a single administration.
Dosage > **maxDosePerLifetime**	Upper limit on medication per lifetime of the patient.	0..1	SimpleQuantity	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA. One possible way to represent this concept is to represent an observation with a code equivalent to max dose per lifetime. One possibly way to represent this concept is to represent an instance of dosage with maxDoseQuantity and effectiveTime/high/@value="PINF" thus indicating that the end of the period of administration is positive infinity.
Dosage > **rate[x]**	Amount of medication per unit of time.	0..1	Ratio | Range | SimpleQuantity	**//rateQuantity**	

Examples

Example A.19. AU Base Dosage - MedicationStatement with two instances of structured dosage

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - more than one instance of Dosage -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- identifier -->
        <id root="4255b903-6f90-41b8-a71c-8ac0ee1ebdc3"/>
        <!-- medication.as(medicationCodeableConcept) -->
        <consumable>
            <manufacturedProduct>
                <manufacturedMaterial>
                    <code code="6006011000036102"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                        displayName="Lasix 40 mg tablet">
                        <originalText>Lasix (frusemide 40 mg)
                            tablet</originalText>
                    </code>
                </manufacturedMaterial>
            </manufacturedProduct>
        </consumable>
        <!-- Dosage to indicate asNeeded with a condition-->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP"  >
            <!-- sequence -->
            <sequenceNumber value="1"/>
            <substanceAdministration  classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT" >
                <consumable>
                    <manufacturedProduct>
                        <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA" />
                    </manufacturedProduct>
                </consumable>
                <!-- asNeededCodeableConcept  - instantiated as prn with specified condition -->
                <precondition typeCode="PRCN">
                    <criterion>
                        <code code="ASSERTION"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"/>
                        <!-- joint pain -->
                        <value xsi:type="CD" code="57676002"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                            displayName="Joint pain"/>
                    </criterion>
                </precondition>
            </substanceAdministration>
        </entryRelationship>
        <!-- Dosage to indicate timing -->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
            <!-- sequence -->
            <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
            <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT">
                <!-- additionalInstruction / patientInstruction -->
                <text>Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes</text>
                <!-- timing -->
                <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A">
                    <phase>
                        <low value="198701010800" inclusive="true"/>
                        <width value="10" unit="min"/>
                    </phase>
                    <period value="1" unit="d"/>
```

```
                </effectiveTime>
                <!-- route -->
                <routeCode code="C38288" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1" codeSystemName="NCI Thesaurus" displayName="Oral"/>
                <!-- dose -->
                <doseQuantity value ="1" />
                <consumable>
                    <manufacturedProduct>
                        <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA" />
                    </manufacturedProduct>
                </consumable>
            </substanceAdministration>
        </entryRelationship>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.20. AU Base Dosage - MedicationStatement with one instance of structured dosage

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - single instance of Dosage  -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN" >
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="ab6d45ff-fd58-4f38-8009-ae1aa84a4f43"/>
        <!-- method -->
        <ext:methodCode code="421134003" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Inhale" />
        <!-- route -->
        <routeCode code="ORNEB" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.112" codeSystemName="Route Code" displayName="Inhalation, nebulization, oral"/>
        <!-- dose -->
        <doseQuantity value ="1"  />
        <!-- maxDosePerPeriod -->
        <maxDoseQuantity>
            <numerator value="1" />
            <denominator value="1" unit="h" />
        </maxDoseQuantity>
        <administrationUnitCode code="415215001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"  codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Puff" />
        <!-- medication.as(medicationCodeableConcept) -->
        <consumable>
            <manufacturedProduct>
                <manufacturedMaterial>
                    <code code="7113011000036100"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                        displayName="Spiriva 18 microgram powder for inhalation, 1 capsule">
                        <originalText>Spiriva (tiotropium bromide 18mg per
                            inhalation) inhalant</originalText>
                    </code>
                </manufacturedMaterial>
            </manufacturedProduct>
        </consumable>
        <!-- asNeededBoolean=true - instantiated as prn with no specified condition -->
        <precondition typeCode="PRCN">
            <criterion>
                <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"/>
                <value xsi:type="CD" nullFlavor="NI"/>
            </criterion>
        </precondition>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

A.7 Timing

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type Timing can map to CDA (R2).

The mapping table below provides a set of preferred mappings to CDA Schema elements and do not represent conformance requirements. See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Timing	Specifies an event that may occur multiple times. Timing schedules are used to record when things are planned, expected or requested to occur. The most common usage is in dosage instructions for medications. They are also used when planning care of various kinds, and may be used for reporting the schedule to which past regular activities were carried out.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Element	**//effectiveTime**	
Timing > **event**	Identifies specific times when the event occurs.	0..*	dateTime	//effectiveTime/**@value**	
Timing > **repeat**	A set of rules that describe when the event is scheduled.	0..1	Element	n/a	Not mapped directly; implicit in the instantiation of the effectiveTime xsi:type, e.g. PIVL_TS or EIVL_TS, and the mapping of the child elements. If duration is present, durationUnit **SHALL** be present. If timeOfDay is present, when **SHALL NOT** be present. If period is present, periodUnit **SHALL** be present. duration **SHALL** be a non-negative value. period **SHALL** be a non-negative value. If periodMax is present, period **SHALL** be present. If offset is present, when **SHALL** be present.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Timing > repeat > **bounds[x]**	Either a duration for the length of the timing schedule, a range of possible length, or outer bounds for start and/or end limits of the timing schedule.	0..1	Duration | Range | Period	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "IVL_TS". **instantiation choices:** If bounds is a Duration then it **SHALL** be instantiated as effectiveTime/width. If bounds is a Range then it is expected to be included in Dosage as text, or additionalInstruction, or patientInstruction as appropriate. If bounds is a Period then it **SHALL** be instantiated as effectiveTime/low/@value and effectiveTime/high/@value.
Timing > repeat > **count**	A total count of the desired number of repetitions.	0..1	integer	//repeatNumber/@value	count **SHALL** only be instantiated in the repeatNumber element of the Dosage substanceAdministration act where the moodCode is "INT" or "PLAN".
Timing > repeat > **countMax**	A maximum value for the count of the desired repetitions (e.g. do something 6-8 times).	0..1	integer	//repeatNumber/high/@value	
Timing > repeat > **duration**	How long this thing happens for when it happens.	0..1	decimal	//effectiveTime/phase/width/**@value**	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHOULD** be "PIVL_TS".
Timing > repeat > **durationMax**	The upper limit of how long this thing happens for when it happens.	0..1	decimal	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Timing > repeat > **durationUnit**	The units of time for the duration, in UCUM units.	0..1	code	//effectiveTime/phase/width/**@unit**	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHOULD** be "PIVL_TS".

Timing > repeat > **frequency**	The number of times to repeat the action within the specified period / period range (i.e. both period and periodMax provided).	0..1	integer	//effectiveTime/**frequency**
				
				//effectiveTime/frequency/**numerator**
					frequency is expressed as the numerator (with an xsi:type of "INT") and period is expressed in CDA as the denominator.
					
					frequency is often not included in CDA as a separate element but addressed by adjusting the values of period and periodUnit to take into account frequency.
					
					effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "PIVL_TS".

Timing > repeat > **frequencyMax**	If present, indicates that the frequency is a range - so to repeat between [frequency] and [frequencyMax] times within the period or period range.	0..1	integer	//effectiveTime/**phase**	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHOULD** be "PIVL_TS".
Timing > repeat > **period**	Indicates the duration of time over which repetitions are to occur; e.g. to express '3 times per day', 3 would be the frequency and '1 day' would be the period.	0..1	decimal	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHOULD** be "PIVL_TS". **instantiation choices:** May be represented by effectiveTime/phase or effectiveTime/period.
Timing > repeat > **periodMax**	If present, indicates that the period is a range from [period] to [periodMax], allowing expressing concepts such as 'do this once every 3-5 days.	0..1	decimal	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHOULD** be "PIVL_TS". **instantiation choices:** May be represented by effectiveTime/phase or effectiveTime/period/high.

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
Timing > repeat > **periodUnit**	The units of time for the period in UCUM units.	0..1	code	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHOULD** be "PIVL_TS". **instantiation choices:** May be represented by effectiveTime/phase/@unit or effective-Time/period/low/@unit or effectiveTime/period/high/@unit.
Timing > repeat > **dayOfWeek**	If one or more days of week is provided, then the action happens only on the specified day(s).	0..*	code	//effectiveTime/**@xsi:type="PIVL_TS"**	The value between low and high represents the day of the week by selecting a known day. For example a low/@value of 20001202 and a high/@value of 20001203 represents Saturday by setting the period to the whole of the Saturday of the 2nd of December 2000.
				//effectiveTime/**@alignment="DW"**	
				//effectiveTime/**phase**	
				//effectiveTime/phase/**low/@value**	
				//effectiveTime/phase/**low/@inclusive="true"**	
				//effectiveTime/phase/**high/@value**	
				//effectiveTime/phase/**high/@inclusive="false"**	
Timing > repeat > **timeOfDay**	Specified time of day for action to take place.	0..*	time	//effectiveTime/**phase**	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHOULD** be "PIVL_TS".
				//effectiveTime/phase/**low**	
				//effectiveTime/phase/low/**@value**	
Timing > repeat > **when**	Real world events that the occurrence of the event should be tied to.	0..*	code	//effectiveTime/**event**	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "EIVL_TS". EventTiming (required)
Timing > repeat > **offset**	The number of minutes from the event. If the event code does not indicate whether the minutes is before or after the event, then the offset is assumed to be after the event.	0..1	unsignedInt	//effectiveTime/**offset**	effectiveTime/@xsi:type **SHALL** be "EIVL_TS".
Timing > **code**	A code for the timing schedule. Some codes such as BID are ubiquitous, but many institutions define their own additional codes. If a code is provided, the code is understood to be a complete statement of whatever is specified in the structured timing data, and either the code or the data may be used to interpret the Timing, with the exception that .repeat.bounds still applies over the code (and is not contained in the code).	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA; implied by frequency.

Examples

Example A.21. Timing - Dosage with timing

```
<!-- Dosage to indicate timing -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
```

```
    <!-- sequence -->
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT">
        <!-- additionalInstruction / patientInstruction -->
        <text>Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes</text>
        <!-- timing, 1st administered 2009-09-01 at 1:18am and to be taken every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes -->
        <!-- event -->
        <effectiveTime value="200509010118"/>
        <!-- repeat -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A">
            <phase>
                <!-- boundsPeriod / timeOfDay -->
                <low value="200509020800" inclusive="true"/>
                <!-- duration and durationUnit -->
                <width value="10" unit="min"/>
            </phase>
            <!-- frequency=1, period=1 -->
            <period value="1" unit="d"/>
        </effectiveTime>
            <consumable>
            <manufacturedProduct>
                <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA"/>
            </manufacturedProduct>
        </consumable>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
```

Example A.22. Timing - b.i.d twice a day

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- b.i.d twice a day  -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true" operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=2, period=1, periodUnit=d -->
            <period value="0.5" unit="d"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.23. Timing - q12h Every 12 hours

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- q12h Every 12 hours  -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
            operator="A">
```

```
            <!-- frequency=1, period=12, periodUnit=h -->
            <period value="12" unit="h"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.24. Timing - t.i.d Three times a day, at times determined by the person administering the medication

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!--t.i.d Three times a day, at times determined by the person administering the medication-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=3, period=1, periodUnit=d -->
            <period value="0.3333" unit="d"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.25. Timing - q8h Every 8 hours

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- q8h Every 8 hours -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=1, period=8, periodUnit=h -->
            <period value="8" unit="h"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.26. Timing - qid four times daily

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!--qid four times daily-->
```

```
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=4, period=1, periodUnit=d -->
            <period value="0.25" unit="d"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.27. Timing - q6h Every 6 hours

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- q6h Every 6 hours -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=1, period=6, periodUnit=h -->
            <period value="6" unit="h"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.28. Timing - qd daily

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- qd daily -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=1, period=1, periodUnit=d -->
            <period value="1" unit="d"/>
        </effectiveTime>

    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.29. Timing - q24h Every 24 hours

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
```

```
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- q24h Every 24 hours -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=1, period=24, periodUnit=h -->
            <period value="24" unit="h"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.30. Timing - qod Every other day

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- qod Every other day -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=1, period=2, periodUnit=d -->
            <period value="2" unit="d"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.31. Timing - qm Once a month

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- qm Once a month -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency=1, period=1, periodUnit=mo -->
            <period value="1" unit="m"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.32. Timing - q4-6h Every 4 to 6 hours

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
```

```
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- q4-6h Every 4 to 6 hours -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
            operator="A">
            <!-- frequency (where frequency=1)-->
            <period xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
                <!-- period and periodUnit -->
                <low value="4" unit="h" />
                <!-- periodMax and periodUnit -->
                <high value="6" unit="h" />
            </period>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.33. Timing - qam In the morning

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- qam In the morning -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
            <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
            <event code="ACM"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.34. Timing - qam Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- qam Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A">
            <phase>
                <!-- boundsPeriod / timeOfDay -->
                <low value="198701010800" inclusive="true"/>
                <!-- duration and durationUnit -->
                <width value="10" unit="min"/>
            </phase>
            <period value="1" unit="d"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.35. Timing - 1 hour after meal

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- 1 hour after meal -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
            <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
            <event code="PC"/>
            <!-- offset -->
            <offset>
                <low value="1" unit="h" />
            </offset>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.36. Timing - before dinner

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- before dinner -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
            <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
            <event code="ACV"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.37. Timing - every evening

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <!-- every evening -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
            <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
            <event code="ICV"/>
```

```
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

Example A.38. Timing - every Saturday

```
<entry>
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--identifier-->
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88Bl95esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" alignment="DW" operator="A">
            <!-- every Saturday -->
            <phase>
                <low value="20001202" inclusive="true"/>
                <high value="20001203" inclusive="false"/>
            </phase>
            <period value="1" unit="wk"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

A.8 CodeableConcept as a Medicine Item Code

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type CodeableConcept when used for a medicine item code (and related elements medication-brand-name and medication-generic-name) can map to CDA (R2).

In addition to material provided in this implementation guide, guidance on representing coding in CDA is provided by *Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance [NEHT2011bv]*.

Guidance

Where brand name is known, it will form part of the originalText of the medicine item code (e.g. `manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/originalText`), and optionally be in medication-brand-name (`//entryRelationship[brand]/act/text`).

It may be appropriate to send multiple codings for a medicine item code, in this circumstance the primary code may be carried in the medicine item code (`code/@code`) and additional coding sent as one or more translations (`code/translation/@code`).

When sending a medication without a coded value:

- the medicine item code should only be supplied as code/originalText (e.g. as `manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/originalText`)
- if both brand name and generic name can be sent, brand name will be sent as stated above; generic name will be sent only in medication-generic-name (`//entryRelationship[generic]/act`)
- if only generic name can be sent, it will form part of the originalText of the medicine item code (e.g. `manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/originalText`), and optionally be in medication-generic-name (`//entryRelationship[generic]/act`)
- if a name can be sent, but it cannot be determined if it is a brand or generic name, the name will form part of the originalText of the medicine item code (e.g. `manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/originalText`)
- if a name is not known but a meaningful description or formula can be sent, the description form part of the originalText of the medicine item code (e.g. `manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/originalText`)

The mappings in the table provided below are a set of preferred mappings from the complex data type CodeableConcept to the ConceptDescriptor (CD) data type [HL7V3] and do not represent conformance requirements. See Legend - CDA mapping table for logical elements for an explanation of mapping table presentation.

CDA mapping

Logical element	Logical element description	Logical card	Logical type	CDA schema element	CDA constraints and comments
CodeableConcept	A concept that may be defined by a formal reference to a terminology or ontology or may be provided by text.	Cardinality comes from linking element	Element	**//code**	This mapping table is applicable to any CDA schema element that can be of type CD by replacing out "//code" for that element, e.g. "//value" to become //value/@codeSystem.
CodeableConcept > **coding**	A reference to a code defined by a terminology system.	0..*	Coding	See: instantiation choices	**instantiation choices:** When a single instance of coding is recorded the logical element has no direct mapping; it is implicit in the mapping of the child elements. When more than one instance of coding is recorded, then the additional instances of coding are represented using //code/translation, e.g. //code/translation/@code and //code/translation/@codeSystem.
CodeableConcept > coding > **system**	The identification of the code system that defines the meaning of the symbol in the code.	0..1	uri	//code/**@codeSystem**	codeSystem **SHALL** be a UUID or an OID.
CodeableConcept > coding > **version**	The version of the code system which was used when choosing this code. Note that a well-maintained code system does not need the version reported, because the meaning of codes is consistent across versions. However this cannot consistently be assured. and when the meaning is not guaranteed to be consistent, the version SHOULD be exchanged.	0..1	string	//code/@**codeSystemVersion**	
CodeableConcept > coding > **code**	A symbol in syntax defined by the system. The symbol may be a predefined code or an expression in a syntax defined by the coding system (e.g. post-coordination).	0..1	code	//code/**@code**	
CodeableConcept > coding > **display**	A representation of the meaning of the code in the system, following the rules of the system.	0..1	string	//code/**@displayName**	
CodeableConcept > coding > **userSelected**	Indicates that this coding was chosen by a user directly - i.e. off a pick list of available items (codes or displays).	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
CodeableConcept > **text**	A human language representation of the concept as seen/selected/uttered by the user who entered the data and/or which represents the intended meaning of the user.	0..1	string	//code/**originalText**	

Examples

Example A.39. CodeableConcept - Medication with coded brand

```
<!-- Medication with coded brand -->
<supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="EVN">
   <id root="9ff3422e-4e8c-4133-8cc9-6de74ecfac48"/>
   <product>
      <manufacturedProduct>
         <manufacturedMaterial>
            <code code="17311000168105" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
               codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Panadol">
                  <originalText>Panadol</originalText>
            </code>
         </manufacturedMaterial>
      </manufacturedProduct>
   </product>
   <!-- medication-brand-name-->
   <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
      <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
         <code code="1402141000168102" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
            codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Branded product name"/>
            <text xsi:type="ST">Panadol</text>
      </act>
   </entryRelationship>
</supply>
```

Example A.40. CodeableConcept - Medication with multiple codings

```
<!-- Medication with mutliple codings -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
   <consumable>
      <manufacturedProduct>
         <manufacturedMaterial>
            <code code="28236011000036109" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
               codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="amoxicillin 250 mg capsule, 20">
               <translation code="1884E" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1004.200.10009"
                  codeSystemName="Australian Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme Schedule Item"
                  displayName="amoxicillin 250 mg capsule, 20"/>
            </code>
         </manufacturedMaterial>
      </manufacturedProduct>
   </consumable>
</substanceAdministration>
```

Example A.41. CodeableConcept - Medication without a coded value

```
<!-- Medication without a coded value -->
<supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="RQO">
   <product>
      <manufacturedProduct>
         <manufacturedMaterial>
            <code>
               <originalText>RIVAROXABAN</originalText>
            </code>
         </manufacturedMaterial>
      </manufacturedProduct>
   </product>
```

```
</supply>
```

Example A.42. CodeableConcept - Medication with both brand name and generic name and no coded value

```
<!-- Medication with both brand name and generic name and no coded value -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
   <id root="67425d8f-7929-4a10-9acc-c06981e38d6a"/>
   <consumable>
      <manufacturedProduct>
         <manufacturedMaterial>
            <code>
               <originalText>Valpam</originalText>
            </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
   </manufacturedProduct>
   </consumable>
   <!--   medication-brand-name-->
   <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
      <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
         <code code="1402141000168102" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
            codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Branded product name"/>
            <text xsi:type="ST">Valpam</text>
      </act>
   </entryRelationship>
   <!--  medication-generic-name-->
   <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
      <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
         <code code="1402131000168106" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
            codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Generic product name"/>
            <text xsi:type="ST">Diazepam</text>
      </act>
  </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
```

Example A.43. CodeableConcept - Medication with generic name and no coded value

```
<!-- Medication with generic name and no coded value -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
   <consumable>
      <manufacturedProduct>
         <manufacturedMaterial>
            <code>
               <originalText>Diazepam</originalText>
            </code>
         </manufacturedMaterial>
      </manufacturedProduct>
   </consumable>
   <!--  medication-generic-name-->
   <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
      <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
         <code code="1402131000168106" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
         codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Generic product name"/>
            <text xsi:type="ST">Diazepam</text>
      </act>
```

```
  </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
```

Appendix B. Examples

This implementation guide is intended to support multiple usage scenarios; some templates described within this implementation guide are reused across usage scenarios and other implementation guides.

This informative appendix provides examples that conform to the CDA templates defined in this implementation guide to support implementation by demonstrating one or more supported usage scenarios.

Example	Context	Usage Scenario(s)
Event Summary example 1	My Health Record system	TBD
Event Summary example 2	TBD	TBD
Event Summary example 3	P2P (Point-to-Point)	TBD

A corresponding set of FHIR Release 3 (STU) examples, conforming to the FHIR profiles used as logical models for this CDA implementation guide, are available in the *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]*.

B.1 Event Summary example 1

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

Example B.1. Event Summary example 1

```
<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->


<ClinicalDocument xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"
 xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org/v3-example"
 xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3 ../../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">
 <typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>
    <!-- ClinicalDocument templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033" />
    <!--Event Summary document model templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020" />
    <!--CDA Rendering Specification templateId-->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.226" />
    <!--ClinicalDocument.id-->
    <id root="830812d3-8f60-4549-8b34-c4b315f7ce33" />
    <!-- Composition type -->
    <code code="34133-9"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        displayName="Summary of episode note" />
    <!-- Composition title -->
    <title>Event Summary</title>
    <effectiveTime value="20180719" />
    <confidentialityCode nullFlavor="NA" />
    <languageCode code="en-AU" />
    <!--Composition identifier-->
    <setId root="6C6BA56C-BC92-11DE-A170-D85556D89593"/>
    <!-- Composition status -->
    <ext:completionCode code="F"
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101.104.20104"
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Document Status Values"
        displayName="Final" />

    <!-- Composition subject -->
    <recordTarget>
        <!-- recordTarget (My Health Record Patient) templateId-->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100091" />
        <patientRole>
            <id root="df1cf480-a2ce-419a-891e-16d7e863c6a1"/>
            <patient>
                <!-- Patient name -->
                <name>
                    <given>Iliana</given>
                    <family>Iglesias</family>
                </name>
                <!-- Patient gender -->
                <administrativeGenderCode code="other"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.2"
                    codeSystemName="AdministrativeGender"
                    displayName="Other"/>
                <!--Patient birthDate-->
                <birthTime value="19600820"/>
                <!-- Patient Indigenous-Status (extension) -->
                <ethnicGroupCode code="9" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1004.200.10012"
                    codeSystemName="Australian Indigenous Status"
                    displayName="Not stated/inadequately described"/>
                <!-- Patient identifier -->
                <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                    <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="IHI"
                        root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003608833357361"/>
                    <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                        <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                    </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
                </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
            </patient>
            <!-- Patient managingOrganization -->
            <providerOrganization>
                <!-- providerOrganization (Base Organization) templateId-->
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100034" />
                <id root="79e151f5-4138-4a51-8d87-931f8edb837c"/>
                <!-- Organization name -->
                <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
                <!-- Organization telecom -->
                <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
                <!-- Organization address -->
                <addr use="PST">
                    <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                    <city>Strahan</city>
                    <state>TAS</state>
                    <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
                    <country>AU</country>
                </addr>
```

```
            <!-- Organization identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
                <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </providerOrganization>
    </patientRole>
</recordTarget>

<!-- Composition composition-author-role / Composition author -->
<author>
    <!-- author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) templateId-->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006" />
    <!-- Composition date -->
    <time value="20180719"/>
    <assignedAuthor>
        <id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
        <!-- PractitionerRole code -->
        <code code="253111"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
              displayName="General Practitioner">
            <originalText>GP</originalText>
        </code>
        <!-- Practitioner telecom -->
        <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:bhelpman@example.devonportgp.com.au"/>
        <!-- PractitionerRole practitioner -->
        <assignedPerson>
            <!-- assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) templateId -->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100040" />
            <!-- Practitioner name -->
            <name use="L">
                <given>Barry</given>
                <family>Helpman</family>
                <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
            </name>
            <!-- PractitionerRole identifier or Practitioner identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
                    assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
                        extension="5544887B"
                        assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
                <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </assignedPerson>
        <!-- PractitionerRole organization -->
        <representedOrganization>
            <!-- representedOrganization (Base Organization) templateId -->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039" />
            <id root="42c9e70e-a026-48b8-80d6-4d17a11b4ee6"/>
            <!-- Organization name -->
            <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
            <!-- Organization telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:reception@example.dfmc.com.au"/>
            <telecom use="WP" value="fax:0385435557"/>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
            <!-- Organization address -->
            <addr use="PST">
                <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Strahan</city>
                <state>TAS</state>
                <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
                <country>Australia</country>
            </addr>
            <!-- Organization identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
                <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </representedOrganization>
    </assignedAuthor>
</author>

<!-- Composition custodian -->
<custodian>
    <!-- custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier) templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002" />
    <assignedCustodian>
        <representedCustodianOrganization>
            <id root="42c9e70e-a026-48b8-80d6-4d17a11b4ee6"/>
            <!-- Organization name -->
            <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
            <!-- Organization telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
            <!-- Organization address -->
            <addr use="PST">
                <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Strahan</city>
                <state>TAS</state>
```

```
                <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
                <country>AU</country>
            </addr>
            <!-- Organization identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
                <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </representedCustodianOrganization>
    </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>

<!-- Composition attester (Legal Attester)-->
<legalAuthenticator>
    <!-- legalAuthenticator templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100012" />
    <time value="20180719"/>
    <signatureCode code="S"/>
    <assignedEntity>
        <!-- attester (Legal Attester) indicating same entity as the author via the same id -->
        <id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
    <assignedPerson>
        <name>
            <given>Barry</given>
            <family>Helpman</family>
            <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
        </name>
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
                assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
                extension="5544887B"
                assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
            <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    </assignedPerson>
    </assignedEntity>
</legalAuthenticator>

<!-- Patient generalPractitioner -->
<participant typeCode="PART">
    <!-- participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner) templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037" />
    <functionCode code="PCP"/>
    <associatedEntity classCode="PROV">
        <id root="ad9f414d-0034-4a1c-998a-bc01cc7e5619"/>
        <associatedPerson>
            <!-- Practitioner name -->
            <name>
                <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
                <given>Francis</given>
                <family>Smith</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>

<!-- Composition encounter -->
<componentOf>
    <encompassingEncounter>
        <!--encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event) templateId-->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064" />
        <id root="3a9c6d4b-9e82-4096-b88c-100b2e824961"/>
        <!--Encounter period-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
            <low value="20180719090000+1000"/>
            <high value="20180719091500+1000"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>

<component>
    <structuredBody>

        <!-- Administrative Observations -->
        <component>
            <section>
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000" />
                <id root="bd166803-0582-434d-9b76-6d0f9d793809"/>
                <!-- section.code -->
                <code code="102.16080"
                    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                    codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                    displayName="Administrative Observations"/>
                <!-- section.title -->
                <title>Administrative Observations</title>
                <!-- Patient date-accuracy-indicator (extension)-->
                <entry>
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <id root="d854d684-de46-437f-997e-bb7a73a08b83"/>
```

```
                <code code="102.16234" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                    codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                    displayName="Date of Birth Accuracy Indicator"/>
                <value code="AAE" xsi:type="CS"/>
            </observation>
        </entry>
        <!--Practitioner qualification-->
        <ext:coverage2>
            <!--ext:coverage2 (Practitioner qualification) templateId-->
            <ext:templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038" />
            <ext:entitlement classCode="COV" moodCode="EVN">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.56" extension="MED0000932850"
                    assigningAuthorityName="AHPRA"/>
                <ext:code code="253111" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
                    displayName="General Medical Practitioner">
                    <originalText>AHPRA qualification for General Practitioner</originalText>
                </ext:code>
                <ext:participant>
                    <ext:participantRole>
                        <!-- matching technical id for the Practitioner entity -->
                        <ext:id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
                    </ext:participantRole>
                </ext:participant>
            </ext:entitlement>
        </ext:coverage2>
    </section>
</component>

<!-- Composition section (Event Overview) -->
<component>
    <section>
        <!-- section (Event Overview) templateId -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059" />
        <id root="64c31179-53c2-42c2-a1d8-0288b77c4bb6"/>
        <!-- section (Event Overview).code -->
        <code code="101.16672"
            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
            displayName="Event Overview"/>
        <!-- section (Event Overview).title -->
        <title>Event Details</title>
        <!-- section (Event Overview).text -->
        <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
            <paragraph styleCode="bold">Presentation date</paragraph>: 19 July 2018 09:00
            <paragraph styleCode="bold">Encounter Description</paragraph>: <paragraph> Patient presented with a headache, fever, sore
                throat. Patient advised she has no known allergies and was prescribed amoxicillin 500mg
                3/day for 5 days, and augmentin forte 1 tablet twice a day for five days during this
                event. Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one tablet
                during the event, and during the event they were given one tablet to take home.</paragraph>
        </text>
        <!--encounter (Summary of Encounter for an Event)-->
        <entry>
            <encounter classCode="ENC" moodCode="EVN">
                <!--encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event) templateId-->
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062" />
                <id root="3a9c6d4b-9e82-4096-b88c-100b2e824961"/>
                <!--Encounter encounter-description-->
                <text>Patient presented with a headache, fever, sore throat.
                    Patient advised she has no known allergies and was prescribed amoxicillin 500mg 3/day for 5 days, and augmentin forte 1 tablet
                    Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one tablet during the event, and during the event they
                <!--Encounter status-->
                <statusCode code="finished"/>
                <!--Encounter period-->
                <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
                    <low value="20180719090000+1000"/>
                    <high value="20180719091500+1000"/>
                </effectiveTime>
            </encounter>
        </entry>
    </section>
</component>

<!-- Composition section (Allergies) -->
<component>
    <section>
        <!-- section (Allergies) templateId -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069" />
        <id root="ad9bc4ce-36fa-4792-af28-a53a03c9a200"/>
        <!-- section code -->
        <code code="48765-2"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
            codeSystemName="LOINC"
            displayName="Allergies &amp;amp;or adverse reactions"/>
        <!-- section title -->
        <title>Allergies and Adverse Reactions</title>
        <!-- section text -->
        <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
            <paragraph>No known allergies.</paragraph>
        </text>
        <!--section entry-->
        <entry>
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <!--observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) templateId-->
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100014" />
                <code code="102.05517"
                    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                    codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                    displayName="Adverse Reaction">
                </code>
```

```
                <!--AllergyIntolerance code-->
                <value xsi:type="CD"
                    code="716186003"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                    displayName="No known allergy">
                    <originalText>No known allergies</originalText>
                </value>
                <!--AllergyIntolerance clinical-Status-->
                <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <code code="103.32013"
                            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                            displayName="Clinical Status"/>
                        <value code="active"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.118"
                            codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceClinicalStatus"
                            displayName="Active"
                            xsi:type="CD"/>
                    </observation>
                    <!--AllergyIntolerance verification-Status-->
                </entryRelationship>
                <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <code code="103.32012"
                            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                            displayName="Verification Status"/>
                        <value code="confirmed"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.116"
                            codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceVerificationStatus"
                            displayName="Confirmed"
                            xsi:type="CD"/>
                    </observation>
                </entryRelationship>
            </observation>
        </entry>
    </section>
</component>

<!-- Composition section (Medications) -->
<component>
    <section>
        <!-- section (Medications) templateId -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061" />
        <id root="275e7d93-37f9-4b67-895b-ab6b5b7627b6"/>
        <!-- section code -->
        <code code="10160-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
            codeSystemName="LOINC"
            displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/>
        <!-- section title -->
        <title>Medications</title>
        <!-- section text -->
        <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
            <table border="1">
                <caption>Medicines List</caption>
                <thead>
                    <tr>
                        <th>Medicine</th>
                        <th>Directions</th>
                        <th>Clinical Indication/Change description</th>
                        <th>Status</th>
                    </tr>
                </thead>
                <tbody>
                    <tr ID="c55f2a65-2b63-4ee2-970e-4779e8722f78">
                        <td><content styleCode="bold">amoxicillin</content> 500 mg - capsule</td>
                        <td>Take 3 tablets a day for 5 days.</td>
                        <td>For headache, fever, sore throat.</td>
                        <td>New prescription</td>
                    </tr>
                    <tr ID="ffad0931-a062-4d74-8cc3-9e8836f51ba3">
                        <td><content styleCode="bold">Augmentin Duo Forte</content> 875/125 - tablet</td>
                        <td>Take 1 tablet twice a day for 5 days.</td>
                        <td>For headache, fever, sore throat.</td>
                        <td>New prescription</td>
                    </tr>
                    <tr ID="ed58490f-903c-4b8b-af6f-d30fad3df7e8">
                        <td><content styleCode="bold">sumatriptan</content> 100 mg - tablet</td>
                        <td>As required</td>
                        <td>For migraine.</td>
                        <td>Unchanged</td>
                    </tr>
                </tbody>
            </table>
        </text>
        <!-- section entry -->
        <entry>
            <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)templateId-->
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063" />
                <!--List code-->
                <code code="10160-0"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                    codeSystemName="LOINC"
                    displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"></code>
                <!--List status-->
                <statusCode code="active"/>
```

```
<!--List entry -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <!--List entry item-->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine) templateId -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" />
        <id root="dc62bf6a-8843-4a89-9a89-713f686ee8e1"/>
        <!-- MedicationStatement dosage -->
        <text>
            <reference value="#c55f2a65-2b63-4ee2-970e-4779e8722f78"/>
        </text>
        <!-- MedicationStatement status; taken=n -->
        <statusCode code="new"/>
        <!-- MedicationStatement medication -->
        <consumable>
            <manufacturedProduct>
                <manufacturedMaterial>
                    <code code="23551011000036108"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                        codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                        displayName="amoxicillin 500 mg capsule">
                        <originalText>amoxicillin 500 mg capsule</originalText>
                    </code>
                </manufacturedMaterial>
            </manufacturedProduct>
        </consumable>
        <!-- MedicationStatement reasonCode -->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <code code="103.10141"
                    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                    codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                    displayName="Clinical Indication"/>
                <value xsi:type = "CD">
                    <originalText>headache, fever and sore throat</originalText>
                </value>
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        <!--List entry flag-->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <code code="288533004"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                    displayName="Change values"/>
                <!--List change-description-->
                <text>Prescription for headache, fever, sore throat</text>
                <value code="prescribed"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
                    codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
                    displayName="New prescription"
                    xsi:type="CD"/>
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- List entry -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
<!-- List entry item -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" />
    <id root="b438ef4b-d768-4dda-a1b8-092f0ce2279c"/>
    <!-- MedicationStatement dosage -->
    <text>
        <reference value="#ffad0931-a062-4d74-8cc3-9e8836f51ba3"/>
    </text>
    <!-- MedicationStatement status -->
    <statusCode code="new"/>
    <!-- MedicationStatement medication -->
    <consumable>
        <manufacturedProduct>
            <manufacturedMaterial>
                <code code="6052011000036107"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                    displayName="Augmentin Duo Forte 875/125 film-coated tablet">
                    <originalText>Augmentin Duo Forte 875/125 film-coated tablet</originalText>
                </code>
            </manufacturedMaterial>
        </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>
    <!-- MedicationStatement reasonCode -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <code code="103.10141"
                codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                displayName="Clinical Indication">
            </code>
            <value xsi:type="CD">
                <originalText>headache, fever and sore throat</originalText>
            </value>
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!--List flag-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <code code="288533004"
```

```
                                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                                codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                                displayName="Change values"/>
                            <!--List change-description-->
                            <text>Prescription for headache, fever, sore throat</text>
                            <value code="new"
                                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
                                codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
                                displayName="New" xsi:type="CD"/>
                            </observation>
                        </entryRelationship>
                    </substanceAdministration>
                    </entryRelationship>
                    <!-- List entry -->
                    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                        <!-- List entry item-->
                        <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
                            <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine) templateId; taken=y -->
                            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" />
                            <id root="ed911568-9b57-4d53-8f38-9b92ca8d20dd"/>
                            <!-- MedicationStatement dosage -->
                            <text>
                                <reference value="#ed58490f-903c-4b8b-af6f-d30fad3df7e8"/>
                            </text>
                            <!-- MedicationStatement status -->
                            <statusCode code="active"/>
                            <!-- MedicationStatement medication -->
                            <consumable>
                                <manufacturedProduct>
                                    <manufacturedMaterial>
                                        <code code="45219011000036101"
                                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                                            codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                                            displayName="sumatriptan 100 mg tablet">
                                            <originalText>sumatriptan 100 mg tablet</originalText>
                                        </code>
                                    </manufacturedMaterial>
                                </manufacturedProduct>
                            </consumable>
                            <!-- MedicationStatement reasonCode -->
                            <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
                                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                                    <code code="103.10141"
                                        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                                        codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                                        displayName="Clinical Indication"/>
                                    <value xsi:type = "CD">
                                        <originalText>Migraine</originalText>
                                    </value>
                                </observation>
                            </entryRelationship>
                            <!--MedicationStatement note-->
                            <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                                <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
                                    <code code="103.16044"
                                        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                                        codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                                        displayName="Additional Comments"/>
                                    <text>Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one
                                        tablet during the event, and during the event they were given one tablet to take home.</text>
                                </act>
                            </entryRelationship>
                            <!--List entry flag-->
                            <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
                                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                                    <code code="288533004"
                                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                                        codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                                        displayName="Change values"/>
                                    <!--List change-description-->
                                    <text>Migraine</text>
                                    <value code="nochange"
                                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
                                        codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
                                        displayName="Unchanged"
                                        xsi:type="CD"/>
                                </observation>
                            </entryRelationship>
                        </substanceAdministration>
                    </entryRelationship>
                </act>
            </entry>
        </section>
    </component>
</structuredBody>
</component>
</ClinicalDocument>
```

B.2 Event Summary example 2

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

Example B.2. Event Summary example 2

```
<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->


<ClinicalDocument classCode="DOCCLIN" moodCode="EVN" xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"
 xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org/v3-example"
 xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3 ../../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">
 <typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>
 <!-- Put content here -->

</ClinicalDocument>
```

B.3 Event Summary example 3

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

Example B.3. Event Summary example 3

```
<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->

<ClinicalDocument classCode="DOCCLIN" moodCode="EVN" xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"
 xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org/v3-example"
 xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3 ../../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">

<typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>
    <!-- ClinicalDocument templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033" extension="1.0"/>
    <!--Event Summary document model templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020" extension="1.0"/>
    <!--CDA Rendering Specification templateId-->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.226" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="f292365a-fea5-4d5a-969e-179e763c6810" />
    <!-- Composition type -->
    <code code="34133-9"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        displayName="Summary of episode note" />
    <!-- Composition title -->
    <title>Event Summary</title>
    <effectiveTime value="201606071639+1000" />
    <confidentialityCode nullFlavor="NA" />
    <languageCode code="en-AU" />
    <!-- Composition status -->
    <ext:completionCode code="F"
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101.104.20104"
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Document Status Values"
        displayName="Final" />

    <!-- Composition subject  -->
    <recordTarget typeCode="RCT">
        <!-- recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) templateId-->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100004" extension="1.0"/>
        <patientRole classCode="PAT">
            <id root="f793801a-614c-4f3e-b6a1-5a453c616607"/>
            <patient>
                <!-- Patient name -->
                <name>
                    <given>Gough</given>
                    <family>Goodpatient</family>
                </name>
                <!-- Patient gender -->
                <administrativeGenderCode code="male"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.2"
                    codeSystemName="AdministrativeGender"
                    displayName="Male"/>
                <!-- Patient identifier -->
                <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                    <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Centrelink customer reference number"
                        root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.369274" extension="307111942H"/>
                    <ext:code code="HC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
                </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
            </patient>
        </patientRole>
    </recordTarget>

    <!-- Composition composition-author-role / Composition author -->
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <!-- author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) templateId-->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006" extension="1.0"/>
        <!-- Composition date -->
        <time value="20190530100000+1000"/>
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id root="72fb1fca-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd"/>
            <!-- PractitionerRole code -->
            <code code="253111"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
                  displayName="General Practitioner">
                <originalText>GP</originalText>
            </code>
            <!-- Practitioner telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:bhelpman@example.devonportgp.com.au"/>
            <!-- PractitionerRole practitioner -->
            <assignedPerson>
                <!-- assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) templateId -->
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100040" extension="1.0"/>
                <!-- Practitioner name -->
                <name use="L">
                    <given>Barry</given>
                    <family>Helpman</family>
                    <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
```

```
            </name>
            <!-- PractitionerRole identifier or Practitioner identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
                    assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
                        extension="5544887B"
                        assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
                <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </assignedPerson>
        <!-- PractitionerRole organization -->
        <representedOrganization>
            <!-- representedOrganization (Base Organization) templateId -->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039" extension="1.0"/>
            <id root="ad89f638-ee4b-4a12-a6d8-2a3613343d7d"/>
            <!-- Organization name -->
            <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
            <!-- Organization telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:reception@example.dfmc.com.au"/>
            <telecom use="WP" value="fax:0385435557"/>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
            <!-- Organization address -->
            <addr use="PST">
                <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Strahan</city>
                <state>TAS</state>
                <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
                <country>Australia</country>
            </addr>
            <!-- Organization identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
                <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </representedOrganization>
    </assignedAuthor>
</author>

<!-- Composition custodian -->
<custodian>
    <!-- custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier) templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002" extension="1.0"/>
    <assignedCustodian>
        <representedCustodianOrganization>
            <id root="ad89f638-ee4b-4a12-a6d8-2a3613343d7d"/>
            <!-- Organization name -->
            <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
            <!-- Organization telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
            <!-- Organization address -->
            <addr use="PST">
                <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Strahan</city>
                <state>TAS</state>
                <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
            </addr>
            <!-- Organization identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
                <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </representedCustodianOrganization>
    </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>

<!-- Composition attester (Legal Attester)-->
<legalAuthenticator>
    <!-- legalAuthenticator templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100012" extension="1.0"/>
    <time value="201606071639+1000"/>
    <signatureCode code="S"/>
    <assignedEntity>
        <!-- attester (Legal Attester) indicating same entity as the author via the same id -->
        <id root="72fb1fca-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd"/>
    <assignedPerson>
        <name>
            <given>Barry</given>
            <family>Helpman</family>
            <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
        </name>
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
                assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
```

```
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
                extension="5544887B"
                assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
            <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    </assignedPerson>
    </assignedEntity>
</legalAuthenticator>

<!-- Patient generalPractitioner -->
<participant typeCode="PART">
    <!-- participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner) templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037" extension="1.0"/>
    <functionCode code="PCP"/>
    <associatedEntity classCode="PROV">
        <associatedPerson classCode="PSN">
            <!-- Practitioner name -->
            <name use="L">
                <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
                <given>Good</given>
                <family>Doctor</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>

<!-- Composition encounter -->
<componentOf>
    <encompassingEncounter>
        <!--encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event) templateId-->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="3d82feb6-53d9-40cc-87af-8df78c372820"/>
        <!--Encounter class-->
        <code code="AMB"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"
            codeSystemName="v3 Code System ActCode"
            displayName="ambulatory"/>
        <!--Encounter period-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
            <low value="20190530090000+1000"/>
            <high value="20190530093000+1000"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>

<component>
    <structuredBody>
        <!-- Composition section (Medications) -->
        <component>
            <section>
                <!-- section (Medications) templateId -->
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061" extension="1.0"/>
                <id root="6c1bf9e7-a238-4f1f-8545-f0debe0183cf"/>
                <!-- section code -->
                <code code="10160-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                    codeSystemName="LOINC"
                    displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/>
                <!-- section title -->
                <title>Medications</title>
                <!-- section text -->
                <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
                    <table border="1">
                        <caption>Medicines List</caption>
                        <thead>
                            <tr>
                                <th>Medicine</th>
                                <th>Directions</th>
                                <th>Clinical Indication/Change description</th>
                                <th>Status</th>
                            </tr>
                        </thead>
                        <tbody>
                            <tr ID="Meds01">
                                <td>Bactrim DS - tablet</td>
                                <td>Take 2 tablets twice a day</td>
                                <td>To treat bacterial infections</td>
                                <td>New prescription</td>
                            </tr>
                            <tr ID="Meds02">
                                <td>Panadol 500mg - tablet</td>
                                <td>Take 1 tablet four times a day</td>
                                <td>For pain</td>
                                <td>New</td>
                            </tr>
                        </tbody>
                    </table>
                </text>
                <!-- act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)-->
                <entry>
                    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
                        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063" extension="1.0"/>
                        <!--List -->
                        <code code="10160-0"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                            codeSystemName="LOINC"
                            displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"></code>
```

```
<!--List status-->
<statusCode code="active"></statusCode>
<!--List date-->
<effectiveTime value="20190530100000+1000"/>
<!-- List entry -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <!-- List entry item-->
    <!-- MedicationStatement taken=n -->
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine) templateId -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="dc62bf6a-8843-4a89-9a89-713f686ee8e1"/>
        <!-- MedicationStatement dosage -->
        <text>
            <reference value="#Meds01"/>
        </text>
        <!-- MedicationStatement status -->
        <statusCode code="new"/>
        <!-- MedicationStatement medication -->
        <consumable>
            <manufacturedProduct>
                <manufacturedMaterial>
                    <code code="6632011000036102"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                        codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                        displayName="Bactrim DS film-coated tablet">
                        <originalText>Bactrim DS - tablet</originalText>
                    </code>
                </manufacturedMaterial>
            </manufacturedProduct>
        </consumable>
        <!-- MedicationStatement reasonCode -->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <code code="103.10141"
                    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                    codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                    displayName="Clinical Indication"/>
                <value code="68566005"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                    displayName="Urinary tract infection"
                    xsi:type="CD"/>
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        <!--List flag-->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <code code="288533004"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                    displayName="Change values"/>
                <!--List change-description-->
                <text>To treat bacterial infections</text>
                <value code="prescribed"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
                    codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
                    displayName="New prescription"
                    xsi:type="CD"/>
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
    </substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- List entry -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
<!-- List entry item -->
<!-- MedicationStatement; taken=n -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine) templateId; taken=n -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="ec23eec6-a1b9-4432-aacb-2ae889be8696"/>
    <!-- MedicationStatement dosage -->
    <text>
        <reference value="#Meds02"/>
    </text>
    <!-- MedicationStatement status -->
    <statusCode code="new"/>
    <!-- MedicationStatement medication -->
    <consumable>
        <manufacturedProduct>
            <manufacturedMaterial>
                <code code="54012011000036102"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                    displayName="Panadol 500 mg film-coated tablet">
                    <originalText>Panadol 500mg - tablet</originalText>
                </code>
            </manufacturedMaterial>
        </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>
    <!-- MedicationStatement reasonCode -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <code code="103.10141"
                codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                displayName="Clinical Indication">
            </code>
            <value xsi:type="CD">
```

```
                                <originalText>For pain</originalText>
                            </value>
                        </observation>
                    </entryRelationship>
                <!--List flag-->
                <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <code code="288533004"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                            codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                            displayName="Change values"/>
                        <!--List change-description-->
                        <text>For pain</text>
                        <value code="new"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
                            codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
                            displayName="New"
                            xsi:type="CD"/>
                    </observation>
                </entryRelationship>
            </substanceAdministration>
                </entryRelationship>
            </act>
        </entry>
    </section>
</component>

<!-- Composition section (Allergies) -->
<component>
    <section>
        <!-- section (Allergies) templateId -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="e8a81398-ef49-4193-b95a-1dfaa114f54d"/>
        <!-- section code -->
        <code code="48765-2"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
            codeSystemName="LOINC"
            displayName="Allergies &amp;amp;or adverse reactions"/>
        <!-- section title -->
        <title>Allergies and Adverse Reactions</title>
        <!-- section text -->
        <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
            <content ID="ALLERGY">No known allergies.</content>
        </text>
        <!--section entry-->
        <entry>
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <!--observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) templateId-->
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100014" extension="1.0"/>
                <code code="102.05517"
                    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                    codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                    displayName="Adverse Reaction">
                </code>
                <!--AllergyIntolerance code-->
                <value xsi:type="CD"
                    code="716186003"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                    displayName="No known allergy"/>
                <!--AllergyIntolerance clinical-Status-->
                <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <code code="103.32013"
                            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                            displayName="Clinical Status"/>
                        <value code="active"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.118"
                            codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceClinicalStatus"
                            displayName="Active" xsi:type="CD"/>
                    </observation>
                <!--AllergyIntolerance verification-Status-->
                </entryRelationship>
                <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <code code="103.32012"
                            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                            displayName="Verification Status"/>
                        <value code="confirmed"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.116"
                            codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceVerificationStatus"
                            displayName="Confirmed" xsi:type="CD"/>
                    </observation>
                </entryRelationship>
            </observation>
        </entry>
    </section>
</component>

<!-- Composition section (Event Overview) -->
<component>
    <section>
        <!-- section (Event Overview) templateId -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059" extension="1.0"/>
        <!-- section code -->
        <code code="101.16672"
              codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
```

```
                codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                displayName="Event Overview"/>
            <!-- section title -->
            <title>Event Details</title>
            <!-- section text -->
            <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
                <paragraph> Patient presented for follow-up with urinary tract infection on 30 May.</paragraph>
                <paragraph> Complaining of frequent and painful urinating. Midstream urine test was done and revealed urinary infection.</paragraph>
                <paragraph> Culture and sensitivity test discovered escherichia coli sensitive to Bactrim.</paragraph>
                <paragraph> Patient was prescribed Bactrim 2 tablets twice a day, and Panadol one tablet 4 times a day.</paragraph>
                <paragraph> Patient has no allergies.</paragraph>
            </text>
            <!--encounter (Summary of Encounter for an Event)-->
            <entry>
                <encounter classCode="ENC" moodCode="EVN">
                    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062" extension="1.0"/>
                    <id root="3d82feb6-53d9-40cc-87af-8df78c372820"/>
                    <!--Encounter class-->
                    <code code="AMB"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"
                        codeSystemName="v3 Code System ActCode"
                        displayName="ambulatory"/>
                    <!--Encounter encounter-description-->
                    <text>Patient presented for follow-up with urinary tract infection on 30 May. Complaining of frequent and painful urinating.
                        Midstream urine test was done and revealed urinary infection. Culture and sensitivity test discovered escherichia coli sensit
                        Patient was prescribed Bactrim 2 tablets twice a day, and Panadol one tablet 4 times a day. Patient has no allergies.</text>
                    <!--Encounter status-->
                    <statusCode code="finished"/>
                    <!--Encounter period-->
                    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
                        <low value="20190530090000+1000"/>
                        <high value="20190530093000+1000"/>
                    </effectiveTime>
                </encounter>
            </entry>
        </section>
    </component>

    <!-- Composition section (Medical history)-->
    <component>
        <section>
            <!-- section (Medical history) templateId-->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100041" extension="1.0"/>
            <id root="db25390c-29ca-4fad-a3ff-31bc7f7767a0"/>
            <!-- section code -->
            <code code="101.16117"
                codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                displayName="Medical History"/>
            <!-- section title -->
            <title>Medical History</title>
            <!-- section text -->
            <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
                <table border="1">
                    <caption>Condition Details</caption>
                    <thead>
                        <tr>
                            <th>Condition</th>
                            <th>Onset Date Time</th>
                        </tr>
                    </thead>
                    <tbody>
                        <tr>
                            <td>Urinary tract infection</td>
                            <td>2019-05-10</td>
                        </tr>
                    </tbody>
                </table>
            </text>
            <!--section entry-->
            <entry>
                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                    <!--observation (Summary Statement of Condition) templateId-->
                    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100054" extension="1.0"/>
                    <code code="282291009"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                        codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                        displayName="Diagnosis interpretation"/>
                    <!--Condition onset dateTime-->
<effectiveTime>
                        <low value="20190510"/>
                    </effectiveTime>
                    <!--Condition code-->
                    <value code="68566005"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                        codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                        displayName="Urinary tract infection" xsi:type="CD"/>
                    <!--Condition clinicalStatus-->
                    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                            <code code="103.32013"
                                codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                                codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                                displayName="Clinical Status"/>
                            <value code="active"
                                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.156"
                                codeSystemName="Condition Clinical Status Codes"
                                displayName="Active" xsi:type="CD"/>
                        </observation>
```

```
                    </entryRelationship>
                    <!--Condition verificationStatus-->
                    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                            <code code="103.32012"
                                codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                                codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                                displayName="Verification Status"/>
                            <value code="confirmed"
                                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.158"
                                codeSystemName="ConditionVerificationStatus"
                                displayName="Confirmed" xsi:type="CD"/>
                        </observation>
                    </entryRelationship>
                </observation>
            </entry>
        </section>
    </component>

    <!-- Administrative Observations -->
    <component>
        <section>
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000" extension="1.0"/>
            <id root="417ad86d-8ed0-42f3-b2fc-cd9b8d6c4f8f"/>
            <!-- section code -->
            <code code="102.16080"
                codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                displayName="Administrative Observations"/>
            <!-- section title -->
            <title>Administrative Observations</title>
            <!--Practitioner qualification-->
            <ext:coverage2 typeCode="COVBY">
                <!--ext:coverage2 (Practitioner qualification) templateId-->
                <ext:templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038" extension="1.0"/>
                <ext:entitlement classCode="COV" moodCode="EVN">
                    <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.56" extension="MED0000932850"
                        assigningAuthorityName="AHPRA"/>
                    <ext:code code="253111" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
                        displayName="General Medical Practitioner">
                        <originalText>AHPRA qualification for General Practitioner</originalText>
                    </ext:code>
                    <ext:participant typeCode="HLD">
                        <ext:participantRole classCode="ASSIGNED">
                            <!-- matching technical id for the Practitioner entity -->
                            <ext:id root="72fb1fca-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd"/>
                        </ext:participantRole>
                    </ext:participant>
                </ext:entitlement>
            </ext:coverage2>
        </section>
    </component>

    <!--Composition section (Diagnostic Investigations)-->
    <component>
        <section>
            <!-- section (Diagnostic Investigations) templateId -->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100060" extension="1.0"/>
            <id root="056fa0ac-fd6d-4420-9e72-9826b2aefbfb"/>
            <!-- section code -->
            <code code="30954-2"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                codeSystemName="LOINC"
                displayName="Relevant diagnostic tests &amp;amp;or laboratory data"/>
            <!-- section title -->
            <title>Diagnostic Investigations</title>
            <!-- section text -->
            <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
                <table border="1">
                    <caption>Diagnostic results</caption>
                    <thead>
                        <tr>
                            <th>Test</th>
                            <th>Result</th>
                            <th>Date</th>
                        </tr>
                    </thead>
                    <tbody>
                        <tr>
                            <td>Culture and sensitivity</td>
                            <td>Escherichia coli grown</td>
                            <td>2019-05-10</td>
                        </tr>
                    </tbody>
                </table>
            </text>
        </section>
    </component>
  </structuredBody>
 </component>
</ClinicalDocument>
```

Appendix C. Mapping from requirements

This informative appendix provides a mapping from the requirements of each end-product clinical specification to a logical element (profiled FHIR resource) and its corresponding mapping to a CDA schema element (in a CDA template). At the time of publication of this implementation guide the only end-product clinical specification supported is Pharmacist Shared Medicines List (PSML) which is a sub-type of the document-level usage scenario Event Summary.

The mapping from requirements tables in this appendix demonstrates the logical decomposition of each requirement to the lowest possible element in the applicable logical model and CDA template.

Legend for mapping from requirements

Data item	Req No.	Logical element	CDA schema element	Additional notes
The heading text of the requirement as taken from the requirements specification.	The requirement number as taken from the requirement specification.	Either the name of the lowest element in a profiled FHIR resource that addresses the requirement or n/a where the requirement has been deemed not applicable. If the lowest possible decomposition is to the resource then only the resource name (e.g. Patient) is present. If the lowest possible decomposition is to one or more child elements of a FHIR resource then a ">" notation is used to indicate the hierarchical relationship. For example Patient > communication > language indicates the requirement maps to the language element, that is a child of the communication element, in the Patient FHIR resource. Where a requirement is addressed by multiple elements, the elements are presented in order of appearance in the profiled FHIR resource.	Either the path to the lowest level CDA schema element in a template that addresses the requirement or n/a where the requirement has been deemed not applicable to a CDA template. The syntax for this uses an XPath like notation and starts as the root element ClinicalDocument e.g. ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole/patient/name Where an element is addressed by multiple CDA schema element paths, each path is presented.	Additional notes are provided where a gap between a requirement, or parts of a requirement, and the profiles is identified. Where a requirement is fully addressed by the mapped elements then no entry in this column is expected.

C.1 Mapping from ES information requirements

The table below provides mapping from the requirements in *Event Summary Information Requirements [NEHT2015a]* to the corresponding supported element in the Composition (Event Summary) model and their corresponding CDA schema element(s) in the ClinicalDocument (Event Summary) template from the root `ClinicalDocument`.

See C.1 Legend for mapping from requirements for an explanation of requirements mapping table presentation.

Data item	Req No.	Element	CDA schema element	Additional notes
Individual Healthcare Identifier (mandatory)	022082	Patient > identifier	/ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ext:asEntityIdentifier	

References

[DH2019a] Australian Digital Health Agency, 28 February 2019, *Common - Clinical Document*, Version 1.5.2.
https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-2807-2019

[DH2019g] Australian Digital Health Agency, Not yet published, *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide*, Version 1.0.0.
https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/common-clinical-document

[HI2011] Health Intersections, 2011, *Representation of Common Australian Identifiers in v2 and CDA*, accessed 28 November 2011.
http://www.healthintersections.com.au/?p=721

[HL7AUF3B2] HL7 Australia, *Australian Base Implementation Guide (AU Base 1.1.1)*, version 1.1.1 21 January 2020.
http://hl7.org.au/fhir/base/aubase1.1/index.html

[HL7CDAR2] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture*, Release 2.
http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=7

[HL7FHIR3] Health Level Seven, Inc., 24 October 2019, *FHIR Release 3 (STU)*.
http://hl7.org/fhir/STU3/

[HL7RIM] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Version 3 Standard – Reference Information Model*.
http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=77

[HL7V3] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Version 3 Standard*.
http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=186

[IHTS2010] International Health Terminology Standards Development Organisation, January 2010, *SNOMED CT*, accessed 15 March 2010.
http://www.ihtsdo.org/snomed-ct

[INFO2009] Canada Health Infoway, *CDA Validation Tools: infoway_release_2_2X_18.zip*.
http://www.hl7.org/memonly/downloads/v3edition.cfm

[NEHT2011bv] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 October 2011, *Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance*, Version 1.0.
https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-1094-2011/nehta-1097-2011

[NEHT2012s] National E-Health Transition Authority, 07 March 2012, *CDA Rendering Specification*, Version 1.0.
https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-1457-2013/nehta-1199-2012

[NEHT2015a] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Event Summary Information Requirements*, Version 1.2.
https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-1817-2015

[NEHT2015ag] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Event Summary - PCEHR Conformance Profile*, Version 1.4.
https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-1817-2015

[NEHT2015b] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Event Summary Structured Content Specification*, Version 1.2.
https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-1817-2015

[NEHT2015f] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Event Summary CDA Implementation Guide*, Version 1.3.
https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-1817-2015

[RFC2119] Network Working Group, 1997, *Key Words for Use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels*, accessed 05 March 2019.
https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2119

[RING2009] Ringholm, 2009, *CDA Examples*, accessed 15 March 2010.
http://www.ringholm.de/download/CDA_R2_examples.zip

[SA2014a] Standards Australia, 2014, *AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare*.
http://infostore.saiglobal.com/store/details.aspx?ProductID=1753860

[UCUM] The Unified Code for Units of Measure, 2009, *The Unified Code for Units of Measure*, accessed 01 November 2012. http://unitsofmeasure.org/trac/